

**DELHI UNIVERSITY**  
**LIBRARY**

**DELHI UNIVERSITY LIBRARY**

Cl No U8:491g G8

Ac No 29452

Date of release for loan

This book should be returned on or before the date last stamped below. An overdue charge of one anna will be levied for each day the book is kept beyond that date.

---



GUIDE TO  
AFGHANISTAN





*To the blessed memory of that great King,  
Alghazi Mohammed Nadir Shah, the  
Liberator, Deliverer and Martyr, this  
book is humbly dedicated.*

زنده جاوید هست آنکه نکو نام زیست  
*He lives for ever who lived a good name.*



# GUIDE TO AFGHANISTAN

BY  
MOHAMMED ALI, M.A.,  
PROFESSOR OF HISTORY,  
HABIBIA COLLEGE, KABUL  
AND  
AUTHOR OF "PROGRESSIVE AFGHANISTAN"

WITH MAPS & ILLUSTRATIONS

KABUL  
1938



*All Rights Reserved.*

## PREFACE

There is no dearth of literature on Afghanistan, but it is a matter of great regret that most of these books, so far as my knowledge goes, are written by foreigners and interested people. (Most of these writers do not exempt the Afghans from charges of perfidy and treachery. Phrases like 'the treacherous Afghans', 'the cut-throats and robbers,' 'a wild country of the wild people,' 'there is nothing, but rocks, stones and wild-looking Afghans', are not unfrequently met with.) An impartial reader or an unprejudiced student of history will, undoubtedly, at a glance, understand the real object underlying such writings. It is due to the absence of a proper work on the subject that one cannot form a true opinion about this country and its people. The same is the case with the Afghan history, which, in its true form, is yet to be written, and nearly all that has been attempted by European writers is based on insufficient research and personal prejudices.

The volume which I venture to offer to the public was undertaken with the object of supplying this great demand. In the following pages I have endeavoured to describe briefly the country and the people, and to put bare facts before the readers. No doubt, at present, Afghanistan cannot boast of being one of the most progressive countries of the world, yet to one who knows the country and is fully acquainted with the people, it cannot fail to be a source of great interest. 'The Afghan, though comparatively poor, is honest, straightforward, manly and hospitable; the climate of his country is perfect, being clear, dry and cool, and unequalled, so far as I know, by any hill station of the neighbouring countries for its bracing qualities. The land is also very rich in mineral resources, beautiful valleys, fine scenery and fertile patches; and the Government is enlightened and progressive.' The police organisation is so perfect that a tourist or trader can travel in the most inaccessible tracts of the country without the least fear of being robbed or molested, and quite contrary to what he has read in books, will find himself everywhere cordially received.

The book is divided into three parts. Part 1 is the geography of the country; Part 2, deals with the present Government, its constitution, administration and reforms; and Part 3 is the tourist's guide to the country.

It is too much to expect in a survey, covering so wide a field, that all errors have been avoided. I, therefore, trust that allowance will be made for any shortcom-

## PREFACE

that may be found in the book. I shall be thankful to critics who will point out faults both of omission and commission in order that they may be corrected in later editions.

It is impossible for me to thank, as I should wish to thank, all those who have lent me their co-operation in compiling this book. I gratefully acknowledge the advice and support which I have been fortunate in obtaining from H. H. Sardar Mohammed Naim Khan, the Minister of Education. H. H. Sardar Asadullah Khan, Commandant Firqa-i-Shahi (Royal Bodyguards) has also laid me under a deep debt of gratitude by supplying me with all the necessary literature, local as well as foreign, for which I offer him my cordial thanks. I offer my most respectful and warmest thanks to H. E. Mohammed Nawroz Khan, Chief Secretary to His Majesty the King, who has always, with ready courtesy, answered any questions referred to him.

In conclusion I wish to thank my friends, Prof. Barkat Ali Khan Chohan and Prof. Mubarakmand Khan of the Habibia College, who went through the manuscript and made some valuable suggestions and alterations.

HABIBIA COLLEGE,  
KABUL.  
1st August, 1938.

MOHAMMED ALI,

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1

## Part I

### GEOGRAPHY

POSITION AND EXTENT	9
BOUNDARIES	9
RELIEF	15
RIVERS	20
LAKES	26
CLIMATE	26
FLORA AND FAUNA	29
IRRIGATION IN AFGHANISTAN	42
INDUSTRIES	43
MINERALS	45
EXPORTS AND IMPORTS	48
THE PEOPLE	50
PASTORAL LIFE	53
LANGUAGES	53
RELIGION	55

## Part II

### GOVERNMENT

CONSTITUTION	59
The Cabinet	60
REFORMS	61
The Army	61
Education	63
Financial Reforms	66
Public Works	66
Prison Reforms	66
Administration	67
ALMUTAWAKAL ALLALAH KING MOHAMMED ZAHIR SHAH	68

# CONTENTS

## Part III

### *THE TOURISTS GUIDE TO THE COUNTRY*

	PAGE
RULES FOR VISITORS—	73
Passport Regulations	73
Customs Regulations	74
When to Travel	75
Clothing	75
Rates and Prices	75
Fares	76
Petrol	76
Speed Limit	77
Hotels	77
Communication	77
A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE IMPORTANT ROUTES—	78
Peshawar Cantt. to Kabul	78
Kabul	83
The Chahardeh Valley	85
Paghman	85
Sante-Shimali	86
Logar	86
(a) Kabul to Ghazni	87
Ghazni	87
(b) Ghazni to Kandahar	88
Kandahar	89
Kandhar to Kala-i-Jadid	90
Kandhar to Herat	91
Herat	92
Herat to Islam Kila	94
Kabul to Mazar-i-Sharif	94
Kabul to Charikar	94
Shibar to Shikari Pass	95
Mazar-i-Sharif	96
Mazar-i-Sharif to Herat	97
Kabul to Bamian	98
Kabul to Khanabad	99

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Kabul to Gardez	100
Gardez	101

## APPENDICES

### APPENDIX

I. DISTANCES—	
Distances of important places from Kabul	105
CHIEF ROUTES	108
II. HEIGHT AND POPULATION OF IMPORTANT TOWNS	112
III. A SHORT BUSINESS DIRECTORY	114
IV. BIBLIOGRAPHY	127
V. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE—	
The Hatakis	147
The Sadozais or Durrani	147
The Mohammedzais or Barakzais	147
VI. GENEALOGICAL TABLE—	
The Dynasty of the Durrani (The Sadozai family)	149
The Reigning House (Mohammedzais)	150
VII. PERIODICALS	151
VIII. POSTAL INFORMATION	153
IX. AFGHAN CALENDAR	155
X. BANKING AND CURRENCY	156
XI. WEIGHTS AND MEASURES	157



## ILLUSTRATIONS

		FACING PAGE
1.	H. Late Majesty King Mohammed Nadir Shah	... <i>Frontispiece.</i>
2.	H. M. King Mohammed Zahir Shah	... 1
3.	H. R. H. Sardar Shah Wali Khan ...	... 4
4.	General Post Office, Kabul ...	... 12
5.	The New Andarabi Street, Kabul ...	... 16
6.	The Famous Wall of Kabul ...	... 20
7.	The Tomb of Amir Abdur Rahman Khan ...	... 24
8.	Jadahi Shahi, Kabul ...	... 28
9.	Independence Day, Afghan Artillery ...	... 32
10.	Ministry of War, Kabul ...	... 36
11.	A Kabul Carpet ...	... 44
12.	Buzkashi ...	... 50
13.	Independence Day, Sportsmen ...	... 52
14.	H. R. H. The Prime Minister ...	... 60
15.	H. R. H. The Minister of War ...	... 62
16.	H. H. Sardar Mohd. Naim Khan, Minister of Education ...	... 64
17.	Ministers of Foreign Affairs and State ...	... 66
18.	Independence Day, The King Inspects the Army ...	... 68
19.	H. R. H. Prince Mohd. Akbar Khan ...	... 70
20.	H. E. Mohd. Nawroz Khan and the Minister of the Royal Court ...	... 74
21.	Governor's Office, Kandahar ...	... 76
22.	Ministers of Justice and Interior ...	... 78
23.	The City of Kabul ...	... 82
24.	The Chahardeh Valley ...	... 84
25.	Bagh-i-Umumi, Paghman ..	... 86
26.	Ministers of Trade and Public Works ...	... 88
27.	Manzil Bagh, Kandahar .	... 90
28.	A Part of the Minaret, Herat ...	... 92
29.	Presidents of the Senate and National Assembly ...	... 94
30.	The Roza, Mazar-i-Sharif ...	... 96
31.	Ministers of Posts & Telegraphs, and Health ...	... 98
32.	The Author and the Assistant Minister of Education ...	100
33.	Three Maps.	





## INTRODUCTION

AFGHANISTAN is one of the most romantic and interesting countries of the world. The dreamy charms of its fine scenery, its delicious and multifarious fruits, its invigorating climate, its numerous hot springs useful for medicinal purposes, and its rich archæological remains with valuable inscriptions, only partly excavated and deciphered, have always attracted visitors from all parts of the world.

Its charms are manifold, and nature seems to be especially bountiful in its gifts to this country. For the cultivator of the soil there are rich patches of land, with an abundance of water; for the herdsman there are broad meadows and rich pastures. The sportsman can find game along the mountain sides. The artist finds ample scope for the use of his brush and colour; the archæologist and the historian may well whet their enthusiasm over the colossal Buddhist idols, and Greek and other historical remains scattered all over the country, but specially to be met with at Bamian, Aibak, Balkh, Bust, Hadda-Sharif, Herat, Opian, Bagram and Ghazni. Dr. Henry Heras, the learned archæologist of the Bombay University, who, with a view to study the ancient monuments of the country, visited Afghanistan in 1935, writes in this connection :

"The ancient monuments of Afghanistan are very numerous and of extraordinary interest. Perhaps the most interesting of all are the Buddhist remains, of which there are many in the valley of Kabul, in the plains of Jalalabad, in the valley of Aibak, and especially in Bamian. The many Buddhist monasteries, carved out of rock, that flourished in the latter place from the first century A. D., are still the wonder of the tourists and scholars. Bamian was a centre of culture, similar to those which are well-known to the Indologists in Nalanda, Ajanta, Ellora, Odandapura, etc. The remains of Balkh, the ancient Bactres, may, when properly unearthed, reveal the treasures of Greek culture, that are still hidden in the soil of Turkestan. The same may be said of the valley of Bagram in Kohistan, which has now been finally identified with the spot occupied by the city of Capissa, made famous by Ptolemy and by the Chinese pilgrim, Huiien Tsiang, in the 7th century A. D. Very recently Greek sepulchres were also discovered at Kandahar.

"Numismatic and epigraphic evidence is also very prominent in Afghanistan. Ancient coins are so numerous as to give the impression that there is no other

## AFGHANISTAN

country in the world having such rich numismatic treasures; and owing to the peculiar geographical situation of Afghanistan, it is like a corridor to enter India, the coins, one comes across there, are of unusual variety—Greek, Bactrian, Thracian, Sassanian, Humish, Kushan, Hindu, Arabic, Ancient Afghan, Uzbek, Mughal and Modern Afghan. The ancient inscriptions known hitherto are not so numerous, for some parts of the country are not properly excavated as yet. Naturally most of these inscriptions are in Arabic or Persian, but there are also inscriptions in Sanskrit and Pali, and even in Aramic in the Southern Province.

“ The Delegation Française d'Archæologie, according to the contract signed with the Afghan Government, I think in 1922, has been doing splendid archæological work in Balkh, Bamian, and Hadda, six miles south of Jalalabad. The Buddhist monasteries discovered in the latter place are not only important from the mere archæological and historical points of view, but even from the general history of Art. The well-known school of sculpture that so wonderfully combined Greek realism with Indian mysticism, and which was named the School of Gandahara by M. A. Foucher, had, undoubtedly, its centre at Hadda, where its most beautiful specimens have been discovered. The farther you go from Hadda, towards Peshawar, Taxila and Lahore, the more do the Gandahara specimens lose the striking beauty that characterises the specimens of Hadda. I sincerely think that the name of the school in future be changed: the Gandahara School should be styled as the School of Afghanistan.”

Afghanistan is also a promising field of investigation for the student of comparative philology, who could there hope to come across the last of the little known and dying Indo-European languages, which are spoken in some of the mountain fastnesses of the country even to this day.

For the linguist, too, Afghanistan is a most fertile field of research. It is here only that he can study the archaic forms and words of very ancient Aryan languages, which are still preserved to a considerable extent in their original form and purity by many of the isolated hill-tribes, and a study of which might throw some light on the general history of the Indo-European languages.

It is also supposed to be one of the most important primary agricultural centres of the world, a whole series of different plants having originated here. Its luxuriant vegetation still awaits the investigation of the botanist; while the variety of its rocks and soil affords a vast field of research for the enthusiastic geologist.

## INTRODUCTION

For the financier and speculator there are rich virgin mines of gold, silver, iron, coal and petroleum.

Even for those who have neither hobbies nor enterprise, but only want rest and recreation in a lovely country with a pleasant climate under a clear blue sky, Afghanistan would, undoubtedly, prove one of the best health-resorts of the world. The tired visitor from the parched plains of the neighbouring countries can once more regain his health in its beautiful valleys, which having escaped the contamination of manufacturing life, retain up to this day an ideal sylvan scenery and medieval tranquillity.

One, who has been fortunate enough to see it once, cannot afford to forget the beauty of its green valleys, with luxuriant vegetation, watered by innumerable clear streams. But, in reality, it is the presence of the great chain of Hindu Koh (Hindu Kush as it is often called), which gives Afghanistan its greatest charm. The wonderful scenery and the majestic grandeur of this range are unrivalled. Some of the immense heights rise above the line of perpetual snow, and winter reigns on the summits, while summer swelters in the valleys below. Among these lofty hills is to be found some of the noblest scenery in the world; huge craggy cliffs overhanging lovely vales, fed by a thousand streams which leap down the hill-sides. The snow-covered heights are majestic in their splendour, and never more so than when the day is dying,

“When each purple peak, each flinty spire,

“Is bathed in flood of living fire,”

or at night under the light of a full moon,—a rich subject for the writer of poetry and romance. Morning, too, has its own charms. At dawn the sky becomes shot with rose and yellow, the sullen blue of the mountains and valleys turns to royal sapphire. The snows light up and sparkle and glisten. The green fields burst into vivid emeralds, and the trees become alive with lights and mysterious shadows. The streams and rivers gleam like cloth of silver. Here again the poet will find inspiration and the artist beautiful landscape for his brush.

Afghanistan is a hilly country, and a great part consists of snow-covered mountains, some of which reach a height of more than 20,000 feet above sea-level. It is in their bosoms that some of the loveliest Afghan valleys exist, which owe their fame no less to the wild grandeur of these barriers which surround them than to their own intrinsic beauty. It is chiefly this sharp contrast which has led the local poets to speak of them as rich emeralds set in pearls, and all their ballads are full of

## AFGHANISTAN

the beauties of mountains, rivers and green valleys. The poetical beauty of these mountains has often called forth the admiration of travellers and poets. Their craggy broken forms and rich silvery colour give the Afghan landscape a peculiar charm. To a foreigner nothing is more striking than the transparent clearness of the air and the brilliant colouring of the sky. The Afghans are fortunate in having such lofty mountains, and as such, they possess the susceptibility to external impressions—the love of freedom, and the spirit of adventure, which traits are characteristically peculiar to them.

In spring the blossoms are exquisite additions to the countryside; the fine cups of the pear flowers, the delicate tints of the apricot and the apple, and the bright pink of the almond and the peach, the rich scent of the young walnut leaves and *sinjit* flowers, the clinging vines, all bathed in the spring sunshine, bring delight even to those who are usually blind to the beauties of Nature

Almost every gradation of climate is obtainable in this country. During the summer months, while grapes are ripening on the trellises, the heat is so fierce that shade is a necessity, and the whole villages sleep at mid-day in a sunny stillness, for it is too hot to move about,—a few thousand feet up, there is a broad sweeping meadow, where flowers are blooming in vast sheets of rich colour, and the air is sweet, fresh and invigorating at mornings and evenings. Here it is spring and summer has been left in the valleys below. A short journey upwards carries one into a winterland of eternal snow, of glaciers rolling thick over deep descents, where a single false step would mean certain death to the unskilled climber.

In the month of July, when it is harvest time at Kabul and golden fields of wheat are to be seen on all sides, at Paghman, only 18 miles to the west, green smiling fields of wheat, are to be met with. Higher still we find a few blades just beginning to show, and the trees are just uncurling their leaves; while a little higher, it is still winter, the fields are bare, and snow lies about in shady patches. Further heights carry one to some 13,000 feet, and with a perfect and open view on every side, where peak after peak, range behind range, fade into blue and silver haze. Here and there glaciers make splash of white, and great valleys shade into deep blue. Some of the nearer hills are reddish brown, some are bare and black, but the whole panorama is so grand and the air so clear that the weary traveller soon forgets his fatigue and is lost in admiration of the wonderful scenery before him.

Bābar, the founder of the Mughal Empire in India, could not forget its delights. On his death-bed at Agra, he desired that his corpse should be carried

## INTRODUCTION

to Afghanistan and interred in the beautiful Chahardeh valley, near Kabul, his favourite resort. His resting place is still called "Bagh-i-Babar" (Babar's Garden). Is it a wonder that this country, with its snowy heights, gushing streams, rich flowers and mellow fruits, should even from so great a distance, have acted as a magnet to his eyes?

Naturally, the beautiful aspect of the country, blest with such a bracing climate, grand mountains, and rich fields garnished with lovely flowers and fruits, has had no small effect on the character, life and physique of its dwellers. It has made them extremely patriotic, strong in body and mind. As a race the Afghan is tall and athletic, with handsome features. He is bold and warlike, fond of freedom and resolute in maintaining it. He has been characterised at all times by an intense love of liberty. He holds nothing dear to his heart when the interests of his country are at stake. Time and again Afghanistan has produced some of the best patriots, who had not the slightest hesitation in laying down their precious lives in the national cause. It can also furnish a long list of generals who succeeded in founding vast and powerful empires not only in Afghanistan, but in the neighbouring countries as well. Their history in India is not only demonstrative of their unique military skill, tact and valour, but it is especially marked by their diplomacy, their keen progressive struggle, their ambition and ability to rule and govern, and to surpass others in the social and intellectual strife. A people who have produced men like Sultan Mahmud Ghaznawi, Mohammed Ghorî, Avicenna, Sher Shah Suri, Khushhal Khan Khatak, Mir Wais, Ahmad Shah Abdali, Wazir Akbar Khan, Sardar Ayub Khan, Sayid Jamal-ud-din Afghani, and last, but not the least, King Mohammed Nadir Shah, cannot but be regarded as an important factor in the history of Asia.

The real strength of the country lies in the hilly character of its surface and the warlike and martial spirit of its inhabitants, who at the time of national danger, forget their tribal jealousies and with almost perfect unanimity turn out against their common foe, and do not take rest till they have achieved their objective. It is generally admitted that an Afghan is a born soldier, and his country a fortified stronghold.

Afghanistan plays an important rôle in the politics of Central Asia. Though now small in size, its strategical importance is in no way diminished, and it is difficult to conceive of any combination of political circumstances that will throw it into the shade. It has occupied and will continue to occupy the key position in the politics of Asia. Situated between Russian Turkestan and British India, bristling with formidable mountains and deep gorges, Afghanistan holds the command

## AFGHANISTAN

of all the important routes, and of every pass that opens into the neighbouring countries.

At the same time Afghanistan is open to attack, being hemmed in and blocked on all sides. From dim and distant ages, hordes of invaders have tried to force their way through these passes in face of a stubborn opposition held out by its inhabitants, and in spite of heavy losses of lives and property. Unfortunately, these raids and depredations and the intrigues of the neighbouring powers have greatly hampered its material progress and crippled its moral and intellectual development. More than once these marauders, due to their superior numbers, have succeeded in breaking through the lines of these freedom-loving people and, converting the smiling face of the country into a wilderness. Even to this day many interesting relics of the old prosperous cities might be found in their ruined sites, bearing witness to their past civilisation and greatness, enough to excite the admiration of the passers-by.

Commercially Afghanistan is very advantageously situated. Lying in the heart of Asia and surrounded on all sides by wealthy countries, it held an important position in the commerce of Middle Ages till the development of seaborne trade. Even now it can hope, and with reasons too, to regain its lost commercial status. The shortest practical line of communication between London and India lies through Russia and across Afghanistan. The direction would probably be *via* Calais, Berlin, Moscow, Baku, Krasnovodsk, Merv, Kush-Kinski, Herat, Kandahar, and New Chaman. The whole of this distance has now been covered by railway, with the exception of a span of 195 miles across the Caspian Sea, and the gap of 500 miles which still separates Kush-Kinski post from New Chaman. If these sections were bridged, the journey from London to India might be considerably shortened. The net saving of time would be something like a week; while the horrors of the Red Sea and the monsoons would dwindle into dreams for the Indian tourists.

The country between Kush-Kinski and New Chaman presents no obstacle to the engineers; the Parapomisis range would be crossed at the Ardewan or Sabzak pass, neither of which is more than 3,400 feet above sea-level, or 1,000 feet higher than the tableland on either side. From this point Herat, the key to India, is only 40 miles.

Afghanistan has once more begun a progressive career as a modern nation, and by pursuing the peaceful course of educational and industrial reconstruction and developing its natural resources, is rapidly advancing to retrieve its lost status of a world power.

PART ~~7~~ FIRST.  
GEOGRAPHY.





## PART I

### POSITION AND EXTENT

AFGHANISTAN, the land of the Afghans, is the most important Mohammedan kingdom in the Middle East, and one of the leading economical factors in Central Asia. 'It lies between 29° 30' and 38° 30' N. Lat., and between 60° 30' and 75° E. Long. It has an area of 2,70,000 square miles, with a population of approximately 12 millions. Its greatest length from east to west (from the Yoli pass in Wakhan to the Zulfikar pass, north west of Herat) is 770 miles, while its greatest breadth (from Khamiab on the Amu to the Chagai Hills in the extreme south) is about 525 miles.'

It is bounded on the North by Russian Turkestan (the old kingdoms of Khiva and Bukhara); on the west, by Iran; on the east and south, by the mountain tribes scattered along the N. W. F. of India and Baluchistan, all included within the sphere of British influence. Various boundaries commissions have, from time to time, determined its limits. 'Within the existing borders, there are five major provinces (Naibul Hukumagi),—Kabul, Kandahar, Herat, Mazar-i-Sharif and Katghan-Badakhshan, and four minor provinces (Hukumat-i-Ala) of Maimana, Farah, Eastern Province with its capital at Jalalabad and Southern Province with its centre at Gardez.'

### BOUNDARIES

On the north-west from the Zulfikar pass on the Hari Rud, the boundary-line between Afghanistan and Russia generally follows an eastward direction. Commencing from the Iranian border on the west, the boundary starts from the right bank of the Hari Rud, at a point about one and a half mile to the north of the small tower at the mouth of the Zulfikar pass. The Zulfikar pass is not a pass through any range of mountains, as might be supposed, but simply a gorge or break in the line of high cliffs that bounds the valley of the Hari Rud on the east, almost all the way from Puli-Khatun to Karcz Elias, a distance of some 40 miles.

Through the whole of this hilly tract the Zulfikar pass is the only practicable communication between the road along the valley of the river below and the country

## AFGHANISTAN

above. The scenery in the pass is very wild, and at one place the rocky cliffs on either side are barely 30 yards apart. The rocks are full of nests of hawks and vultures, and the cliffs abound in ibex and orial.

' A little to the north of this pass, the first stone of the Russo-Afghan frontier pillars was laid by the Joint Commission, on November 12, 1885. The line thus demarcated gives the possession of all arable land at Zulfikar pass to Afghanistan. Pillar No. 2 stands on the top of the cliffs immediately above No. 1, and thence the line runs in an easterly direction to pillar No. 5, on a prominent and well-marked point on the edge of the second line of cliffs. From this point the boundary runs south-east, following the edge of the second line of cliffs, crossing it at pillar No. 7, about half a mile up the pass, and thence south and south-east for some 4 miles, still following the second line of cliffs, and then bending eastwards up a rocky ridge to pillar No. 10, on the top of the Dengli Dagh hills. From pillar No. 11, on the eastern point of these hills, the boundary line can be followed straight across the undulating ground below to the centre of three low hills, and thence to pillar No. 13, on the roadside half-way between Ak Robat and Ak Rahak, and thence it bends eastwards for some 10 or 12 miles, and turning South crosses the Egrigeuk or Islim stream, as it is variously called, three miles to the west of Islim. From here the boundary runs South-East to the top of the highest hill, marking the watershed between the valleys of the Kush and the Egrigeuk streams, and thence down to Kush-Kinski Post, a Russian terminal depôt, just 80 miles from Herat and 192 miles from Merv. 'The Merv-Kush-Kinski Railway was completed on December 4, 1898. With the completion of the Murghab Railway, this post undoubtedly attained special importance.' From a commercial point of view, Kush-Kinski is at present of little importance: it is solely for strategic considerations that so much value is attached to it.

From here the boundary turns to the north-east and touches Koh-i-Baba Taghi, where pillar No. 24 stands. Continuing the same direction, it crosses the rivers of Shoraba and Kashan. It strikes the Murghab river at a place called Karawul Khana. Then it follows the course of the river due north for some ten miles till it touches Maruchak, the Afghan fortress. Leaving Maruchak and the fertile district of Maimana to the south within the Afghan territory, the boundary line runs through the hills of Chul and undulating deserts of Alieli Turkomans. Then it crosses the Andkhoi and Khwaja Salar districts and ultimately touches the Amu Darya (the Oxus) at Khami-ab

## BOUNDARIES

(water-turning), at the western extremity of the last named district. The fertile valleys of Daulatabad, Aqchah and Shibarghan are all left to the south within the Afghan limits.

'The whole of this boundary from the Zulfikar pass to Khami-ab was determined in 1885—87 after the Panjdeh conflict, and ratified in the final negotiations at St. Petersburg (July 22, 1887) by Col. West Ridgeway and M. Zinovieff.' The whole of this distance is generally marked by small pillars, about 79 in number, but here and there the local partings and water courses have also served the purpose.

The Ridgeway Boundary, as it is called, only served to settle some of the points which had been left uncertain by the Anglo-Russian agreement of 1873. By this a well-defined border-line of nearly 400 miles was substituted for an indefinite one. In the north-east, however, where the Oxus leaves the high mountain cradle in the Pamir, the boundary was still left doubtful.

From Khami-ab to Sari-qul lake, in the east, that is, for a distance of about 400 miles, the main channel of the Amu Darya forms the northern limit of Afghanistan (as laid down by Earl Granville in his despatch of October 17, 1872, addressed to Lord Loftus, British Ambassador at St. Petersburg and accepted by Prince Gortchakaw in his letter of January 31, 1873). Among the territories recognised as belonging to Afghanistan was Badakhshan with its dependent districts of Wakhan, and Shighnan.

About 34 miles east of Khami-ab, on the right bank of the Oxus, lies Kilif, a Russian military post connected with Termez by means of Central Asian Railway. At Kilif the Oxus passes through some rocky ridges running down from the Kohi-Tan mountain in Bukhara, and its bed is consequently very much narrowed here; average breadth is only about half a mile, while at the ferry, from point to point of rocks, the distance is only 540 yards. Termez, another Russian military post, lies about 50 miles east of Kilif, on the right bank of the same river. The Afghan post facing Termez, is Pata Kaiser. Ferry service between Khami-ab and Pata Kaiser is obtainable in several places. Recently the Afghan Government took steps to have a small flotilla in this river.

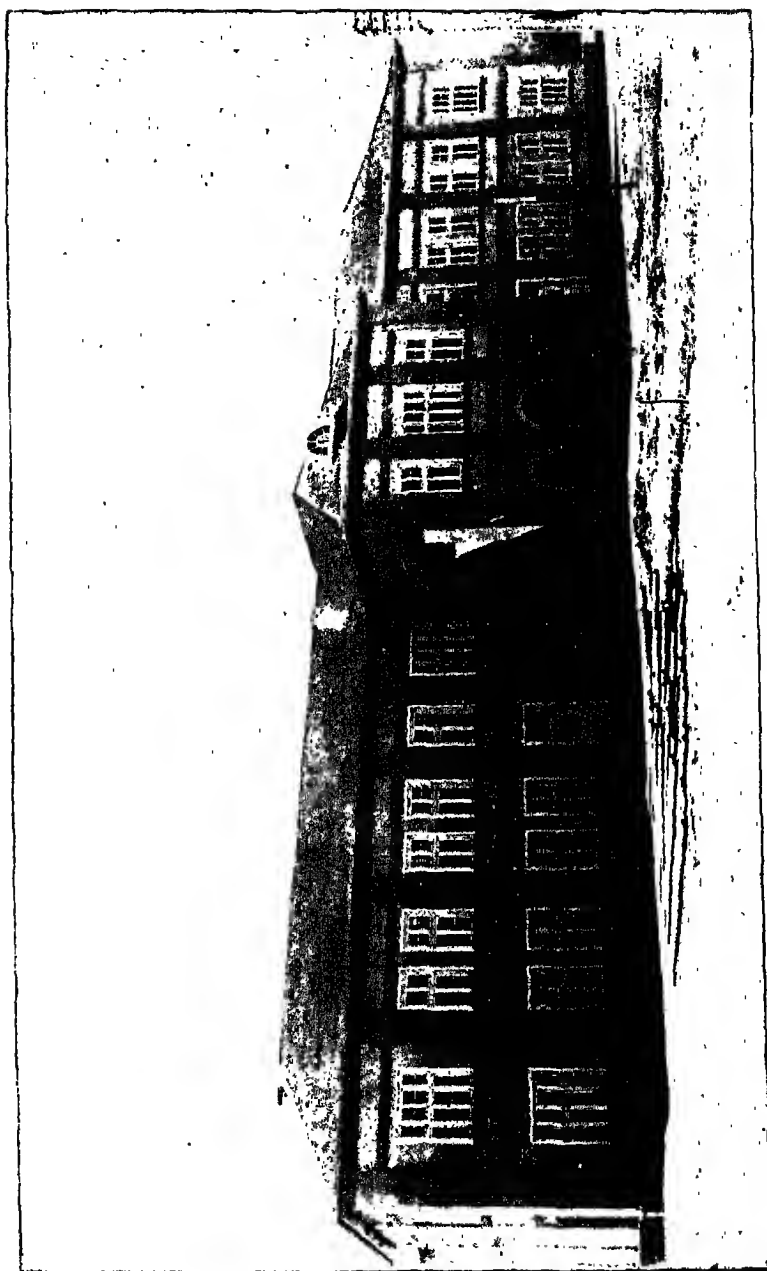
## AFGHANISTAN

From Sari-qul (13,400) to the Yoli pass, extreme east, the frontier between Russia and Afghanistan was delimited by the Anglo-Russian Pamir Commission of 1895-6, after the Shighnan conflict. It was agreed that the Cis-Oxus portion of Darwaz should be ceded to Afghanistan by Bukhara, on the condition that the Afghans evacuated those portions of Shighnan which lie on the right bank of the Oxus. The stream, issuing from the Wood's Lake (or Lake Victoria), was thus recognised for the second time, as the northern boundary of Afghanistan. The Little Pamir is left within the Afghan limits. Starting from a point on that lake near to its eastern extremity, the boundary line follows the crest of a series of impassable mountain crags running somewhat to the south of the lake as far as the Bendersky and Orta Bel passes after which the line runs along the same range. It then descends the spur of a range towards Kizil Robat on the Aksu river, and from thence it is prolonged in an easterly direction till it is lost on the Chinese frontier in the snowfields of the Pamirs.

From this point the frontier line takes a sudden bend to the west and follows the water-parting of the Hindu Koh. Here in some places the height of the range exceeds 20,000 feet, and perpetual snow may be seen on its lofty peaks. Thus a very narrow strip of Afghanistan, called Wakhan, the maximum width of which is nowhere more than 35 miles, extends eastwards from it to 75° E. Longitude. It includes the lofty spurs of the northern flank of the Hindu Koh, an untraversable barrier at this point, where the glacial passes reach 19,000 feet in altitude. Wakhan is, thus, hemmed in by two lofty ranges, and is a high plateau with an average height of 10,000 feet.

It is a long and narrow valley, which runs from east to west and is watered by the upper course of the Oxus (Panja, as it is called) and by the river Wakhan Darya, which is the southernmost source of the Oxus. The length of Wakhan along the Oxus is 67 miles. From Ishkasim to Sarhad, the extreme east, it is about 132 miles. To the south of Wakhan lies the wall of the Hindu Koh, through which several passes lead to northern India. The main pass, Broghil (12,460 feet), leads into Chitral. The northern wall of Wakhan is the Wakhan range, the peaks of which rise to a height of 23,000 feet.

Wakhan lies as a barrier between Russian territory in the north and British India in the south. This corridor has been used for communication from very early times and is still the chief highway between Chinese Turkestan and India.



GENERAL POST OFFICE, KABUL



## BOUNDARIES

The backbone of the main water-parting of the Hindu Koh continues to form the natural boundary between Hunza, Yasin and Chitral states, all under British political influence on one side, and Afghanistan on the other. At Ishtagh (17,450), some 29 miles north of Tirich Mir (the highest peak of the Hindu Koh, 25,426) the boundary-line turns south-west. A long snow-covered spur reaches out southwards, dividing the Nuristan valley (the old Kafiristan) from that of Chitral. It continues to define the eastern border of Afghanistan till it crosses the Kunar river at Arnawai, a village about 45 miles south of Chitral city. A little further, the frontier runs nearly parallel to the Kunar river. Then passing through the Mohmand territory, it crosses the Kabul river near the village of Polosai. Thence following a course southwards it crosses the Khyber Pass at Landi Khana, a fortified British Military post and railway terminus. The Afghan post facing Landi Khana is Torkham. Here the boundary line turns to the west and passes along the Morga Range and Spin Ghar (Mont Blanc) overlooking Tirah, Afridi country, and Kurram valley. Rounding off below the Paiwar pass (8,531) it turns in an easterly direction, and for about 50 miles runs roughly parallel to the Kurram valley, Tori country. Leaving Thall, another British railway terminus to the south, it extends south-west and passes the upper reaches of Tochi. Crossing these, it is continued on the west of Waziristan, meeting the Gomal river at Domandi. Continuing its south-westerly direction, it separates Afghanistan from the districts of Quetta and Pishin. Passing a few miles to the north-west of New Chaman, British Military post and railway terminus, facing Qala-i-Jadid (the New Fort) it runs southwards through the Achakzai country and crosses the Pishin Lora river. Here it goes along the Sarlath range. Leaving Shorawak to the north within the Afghan limits, it bends to the west and separates Baluchistan from Afghanistan. It ultimately touches the Iranian border at Malik Siah Mountain (5,393), the extreme south-west corner of the country.

The eastern and southern boundaries of Afghanistan have seen tremendous changes during the last century. Finally, on November 12, 1893, at a conference held at Kabul between Amir Abdur Rahman Khan (1880—1901) and Mortimer Durand, the British representative, the basis of a new limitation was settled. The Amir was made to agree that Chitral, Bajawar, Swat and Tirah be included within the British sphere of influence. Later on, he was also asked to withdraw his claims over Waziristan and the district of Zhob. Thus the whole of the frontier, from the Black Mountains to the Zhob valley, which, from geographical and ethnical points of view, forms the integral part of the country, was lost to Afghanistan.



## AFGHANISTAN

From the Malik Siah Mountain the Afghan-Iranian frontier goes north-east and strikes the Helmand at Lakri. Then it proceeds northwards through the Sistan swamp for a distance of some 40 miles. Here it turns to the west and passing through the Sistan lakes strikes Siah Koh (Black Mountain. 4,984). From here to the Hari Rud, the boundary line between Afghanistan and Iran long remained uncertain and undefined, but in 1934 Fakhur-ud-din Altai, the Turkish General, was appointed as an arbitrator by the countries concerned. His decisions were, later on, accepted by both the Governments. The line is, therefore, named Fakhri Line. A fixed line was drawn from Musa Abad, a village in the north, to MacMohan Line in the south, to mark the frontier of Afghanistan in the west. Thus a well-defined border was substituted for an indefinite one.

The boundary from Malik Siah Mountain to the Helmand and thence to Siah Koh was already (in 1905) demarcated by Henry MacMohan. South of Helmand, for about 90 miles, the line lies through arid deserts where water is not procurable, and the boundary commission had to face a lot of difficulties in marking this portion. North of this the boundary traverses the country liable to inundation, in which pillars of massive nature had to be erected, while the last 20 miles of the frontier run up the waterless slopes of Siah Koh.

Sistan is divided between the two countries; the eastern part, which is comparatively well watered, belongs to Afghanistan; the western lies within the limits of Iran. There are two lagoons, formed respectively by the Harud Rud and the Farah Rud, both coming from the north, and by the Helmand and Khash Rud, coming from the south and west. To the south of these lakes extend the Naizar, a tract of country covered with reeds. At the time when the Helmand is in flood, the low lagoons become united, and the inundation covers the Naizar also, so that a great lake is formed, which, lastly, discharges its redundant water through a course, called the Shela, into a third depression, the Gawdi-Zirah. The water-supply, and, in consequence, the irrigation of the district, depends chiefly on the Helmand. Therefore the distribution of water has, from ancient times, been regulated by a system of dams and canals. During Mughals and Tamur's invasions most of these hydraulic works were destroyed. This explains the reason why there are found so many ruined sites.

The soil of Sistan is alluvial and consists chiefly of sand, mixed with clay. A part of the surface shows moving sands, the land is generally flat, but there are

## RELIEF

a few low sandy hills. Sistan is fertilized by the deposits left by the inundation of the Helmand and the canal system.

## RELIEF

Afghanistan forms the north-eastern portion of the Great Iranian Plateau. It is bounded on the north by the Central Asian Depression, and on the east by the plains of India. It has a general slope from the north-east to the south-west,—from the perpetually snow-covered mountains of Pamir, rising above 20,000 feet, to the deserts of Sistan, not more than 1,600 feet above sea-level. To the north it slopes away into the depressed tract bordering the Amu,—a vast plain of loess and the Karakum desert. On the east, there is a sudden drop into the Indus valley. It is supposed by the geologists that a large portion of the country previously formed a great ocean extending from the Caspian Sea to the North Indian Plain, and with the exception of the northern plain, the whole country is itself a late geological formation of the Tertiary Period. The salt lakes and Namaksars near Herat bear witness to the fact that once this part of the country formed the bed of an ocean.

Speaking generally, 'Afghanistan is a land of snow-covered mountains, high tablelands, and beautiful green valleys, some of the last are well watered and very fertile. It is in the extreme north or south-west that one can find vast level patches of land, which from time immemorial, till the last days of the Abbassides, were properly irrigated and had many prosperous cities, some of them being the seats of high civilisation and fine culture. But the incessant raids of the Mongols in the 13th and 14th centuries destroyed all these irrigation works and exterminated the inhabitants, thus converting the smiling face of the country into arid plains and desolate wastes. The present Afghan Government is doing its best to restore these plains once more to their former prosperous condition by digging canals and constructing dams.

The north-eastern and central portions of the country form a high plateau, with an average elevation of 6,000 feet, but towards the south-west, the general elevation declines to not more than 1,600 feet. Its highest plateau is the Pamir, more familiarly known "the Roof of the World," which is a vast tableland with a series of narrow valleys, having greatly sloping sides. Its average elevation is 10,000 feet, many of the intervening peaks running up to 18,000 feet and over.

The most important of the mountain systems of the country, supposed

## AFGHANISTAN

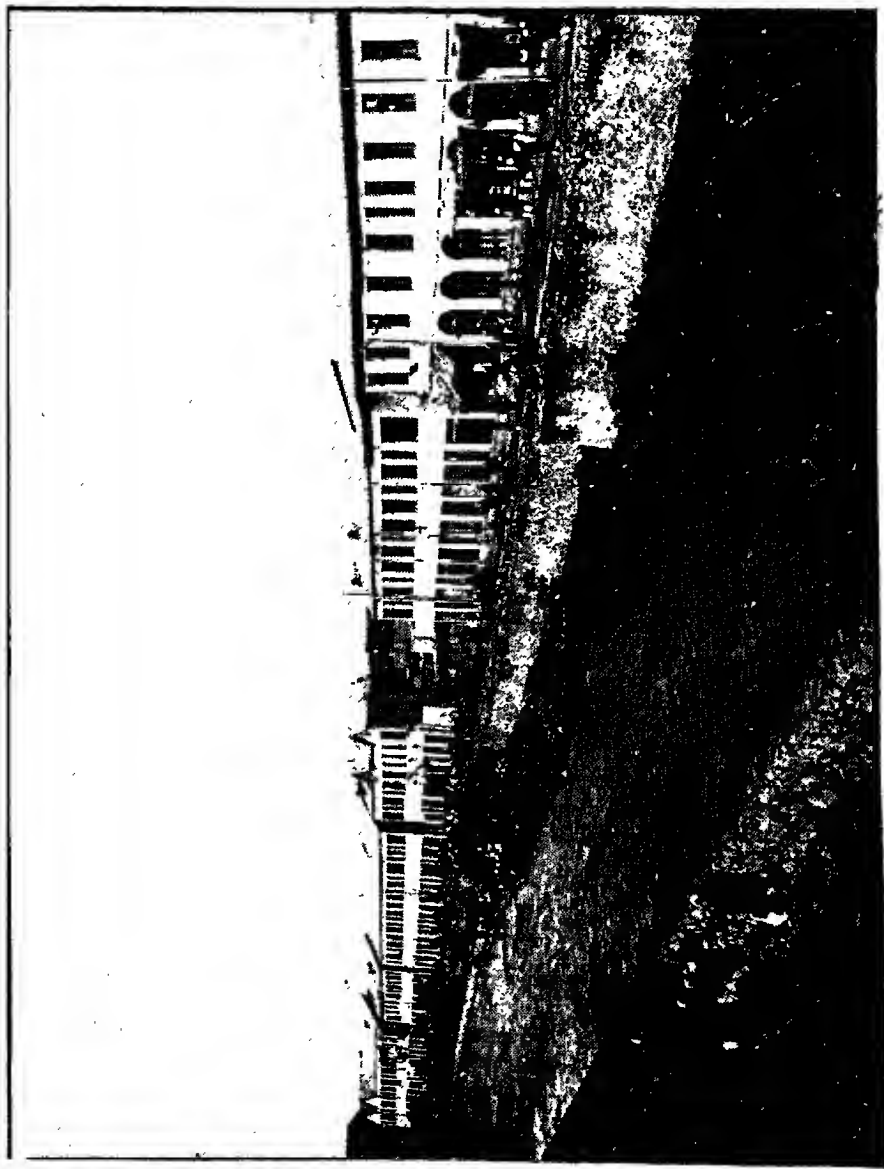
to be a continuation of the Himalayas, commences from the eastern corner of Wakhan and goes through the heart of the country in south-westerly direction for about 600 miles, separating the provinces of Katghan-Badakhshan and Balkh from the district of Nuristan and the valleys of Kabul and Kandahar. This main range which extends from the Pamir to the north of Herat is known by different names in different parts of the country, such as Hindu Koh, on the east, where it branches out from the Pamir up to the Bamian pass; Koh-i-Baba, further west, and Firoz Koh and Siah Koh, a double range divided and drained by the Hari Rud, following due west towards and past Herat. The southern component of this double range is Siah Koh or Black Mountain, the Northern chain is called Safid Koh (White Mountain) or Firoz Koh; while its eastern extremity is known as the Parapomisu, or by its local name, Koh-i-Babuk.

The greater part of the country south of this dominant mountain system consists of a number of subsidiary chains or long spurs, which run from east to west or more generally from north-east to south-west. These ranges and the intervening valleys form the greater part of the Hazarajat, Ghazni and Katawaz districts, while the tangled mass of the mountains, lying to the south of the eastern Hindu Koh, comprises the province of Kabul and the districts of Nuristan and Laghman.

**The Hindu Koh or Hindu Kush.**—The most important Afghan mountain range is the Hindu Koh, a lofty snow-clad range of mountains which forms an extension of the Himalayas to the south-west from the region of the Pamir. It extends from  $75^{\circ}$  E. and  $37^{\circ}$  N. to about  $68^{\circ}$  E. and  $35^{\circ}$  N. Its length is about 375 miles from the Pamir to the Bamian pass. The north-eastern part of the Hindu Koh rivals the Himalayas in the height of its peaks and the extent of its glaciers, some peaks being over 22,000 feet in height. It culminates in the beautiful peak of Tirich Mir (25,426), in the north of Chitral State.

The Hindu Koh may be easily divided into two parts,—Oriental and Occidental.

(1) Oriental Hindu Koh commences from the Pamir and terminates at the Khawak pass. Its length is 230 miles. The extreme north-east portion of this branch at its point of juncture with the Pamir, forms the boundry between three systems of drainage, those of the Indus, the Amu and the Tarim, while further west it forms the water-shed between the Amu and the Indus valleys. From Hunza the Kilik (15,600), Wakhjir (16,150) and Mingatake (15,430) passes lead to the Little



THE NEW ANDARABI STREET, KABUL



## RELIEF

Pamir and Yarkand. From northern Chitral, the Broghil (12,460) and Kachin (18,500) lead also into Wakhan. Other passes between Chitral and Afghanistan are Sar Ishtirag (17,450), Agram (16,630), Afsik (12,300), Durah (14,800) and Mandal (15,300); the last provides communication between Nuristan and Kokchah valley.

The central block of this range between the Kabul and the Kunar rivers to the south, and Katghan-Badakhshan in the north up to the high range between the Mandal and Khawak passes, is included in the rugged country of Nuristan—an inaccessible and difficult tract of dense mountainous forests, known generally as the Asmar Forests.

(2) Occidental Hindu Koh.—It resembles the shape of an almond, beginning from the Khawak (11,640) and terminating at the Dandan Shikan pass (8,830). Its length is 145 miles and its greatest breadth does not exceed 60 miles. At Khawak it is only 16 miles wide. The average height of this range is 14,000 feet, the principal peaks from east to west being Sheptal (15,000), Ouilian (16,900) and Kharzar (15,000).

This range is crossed by a series of passes, which from time immemorial have been used by invaders and travellers and were also the chief trade routes between India and the northern countries. Through them passed the Aryans, Alexander, Tamerlane, Babar and other invaders. The best known passes are Khawak (11,640), Khoknoi (11,450), Til (11,640), Salang and Bajgah (12,300), Kaoshan (14,340), Chahardar (12,300), Bamian (8,900), Akrobat and Pelu (10,255), and Dandan Shikan (8,830).

It was through the Bamian pass that the famous Chinese pilgrim, Huien Tsiang, travelled in the 7th century A.D., and saw the gigantic figures on the face of the cliff, where they are still to be seen, though slightly disfigured.

The Occidental branch of the Hindu Koh is desolate, totally barren and devoid of vegetation. There are many beautiful valleys running in all directions, which are separated and bounded by these high and snow-covered mountains. To the north-east of this range lies the valley of Indirab, in the north-west it is bounded by the valley of Surkhab, to the south lie the valleys of Ghorband and Panjsher.

The whole of the Hindu Koh range, with the exception of a few spurs

## AFGHANISTAN

penetrating Nuristan and reaching a height of 14 or 15 thousand feet, is desolate and treeless. But its perpetual snow serves as a great reservoir, and is the perennial source of a large number of rivers—Kunar, Alishing, Alinghar, Panjsher, Ghorband, Surkhab, Indarab, Kokchah, Kunduz and Oxus being the most important.

These snow-covered ranges, as far as examined, consist everywhere of granite with which are immediately associated gneiss and mica-slate. Earthquakes are not very uncommon in this region, and at several places hot springs gush forth even from beneath the snow. In the eastern part immense glaciers are also to be met with. The stupendous height of these mountains, the magnificence and variety of their lofty summits, the awful and undisturbed solitude which reigns amidst these eternal snows, fill the mind of man with awe and admiration. The fascinating scenery and variety of interest, coupled with a cool but bright and sunny climate, make a holiday in this part of the country an unforgettable memory.

To the west, these great mountains gradually descend to the lesser ranges of Koh-i-Baba, Firoz Koh and Parapomismus.

**The Koh-i-Baba.**—It lies between the Hindu Koh and Firoz Koh. Its length is about 125 miles, and its average height is not more than 13,000 feet. Its culminating peak, Shah-i-Foladi (16,874), 20 miles south of Akrobat pass, overlooks the sources of the principal rivers of the country, viz., the Hari Rud, the Kabul and the Helmand. This range—high, rugged, desolate and almost pathless—forms a continuous part of the continental chain of mountains. It has been described as a rolling barren tableland; wrinkled and intersected by narrow mountain ranges, whose peaks are 13,000 to 14,000 feet in altitude. The winter is long and severe and the range at that time becomes impassable.

**The Firoz Koh.**—It is a double range of mountains roughly parallel to the Tir-Bandi-Turkestan, another range lying to the north. Its northern branch is also called the White Mountain (Koh-i-Safid) while the southern range is known by the general name of the Black Mountain. The White Mountain of this range should be distinguished from the Spin Ghar (Mont Blanc) of the Sulaiman Range, lying on the eastern border. The highest peak of this range does not exceed 11,000 feet.

**The Parapomismus.**—Previously, the whole of this central range from the Pamir right up to the north of Herat was known by the general name of the

## RELIEF

Parapomismus but now it is applied in a limited sense to the small range of mountains lying to the extreme east of Afghanistan in the Badghis district, about 30 miles to the south of Ridgeway Line. It commences from the western extremity of the Firoz Koh and terminates on the Iranian border. Its altitude is not more than 9,000 feet.

**The Tir-Bandi-Turkestan.**—Its length is about 125 miles, and lies just to the north of Firoz Koh in the province of Mazar-i-Sharif. Its direction is from east to west. Its highest peak, Zangolak, reaches a height of 11,590 feet.

The Hazarah Mountains lie just in the centre of the country. They reach a height of some 14,000 feet. All of these are barren and desolate.

**The Spin Ghar**—The Sulaiman range lies to the east of the country, a part of it is now within the limits of British India. Its chief inland off-shoot is named Safid Koh (Mont Blanc) from the snow with which it is always covered. The Afghans more frequently call it Spin Ghar, which has the same meaning in Pushto. It stands to the south of the projection of Hindu Koh and is only separated from it by the valley of Kabul river. It is about 95 miles long. Commencing from the Khyber pass it terminates in the Lohgar valley, south of Kabul. It overlooks the Afridi country, Tirah, and forms the southern boundary of the Eastern Province. Its highest peak, Sikaram, is 15,600 feet, covered with perpetual snow, and it is chiefly from this peak that the whole range is termed the White Mountain. On both sides, the slopes of this range are covered with dense forests.

A high ridge of this range runs south and passes through the Jaji country. It then proceeds in a southerly direction and forms the mountainous country of Jadaran, in the Southern Province. Extending further south, we find it on the left bank of the Gomal river. This range too is all shaded with different kinds of pine trees. From Gomal it continues to the country of Sheranis (Lat. 29°), where it seems to end. In the southern part of the Waziri country, where the range passes through the Gomal river, it is low; but it rises again in the Sherani country, and forms the lofty mountain of the Kussay Ghar, of which the Takht-i-Sulaiman (Soloman's Throne) is the highest peak; snow lies on it for about three months in the year.

Another chain of hills, which commences at the southern extremity of the tableland of Kilat, appears to extend to the north-east as far as the Ghilzais' country (Lat. 32°). At first it separates Shorawak from Pishin, being called the hills of Spin



## AFGHANISTAN

Taizeh. It then, under the names of Khozhuk and Khwaja Imran, forms the boundary of Pishin. It is broad but not high or steep.

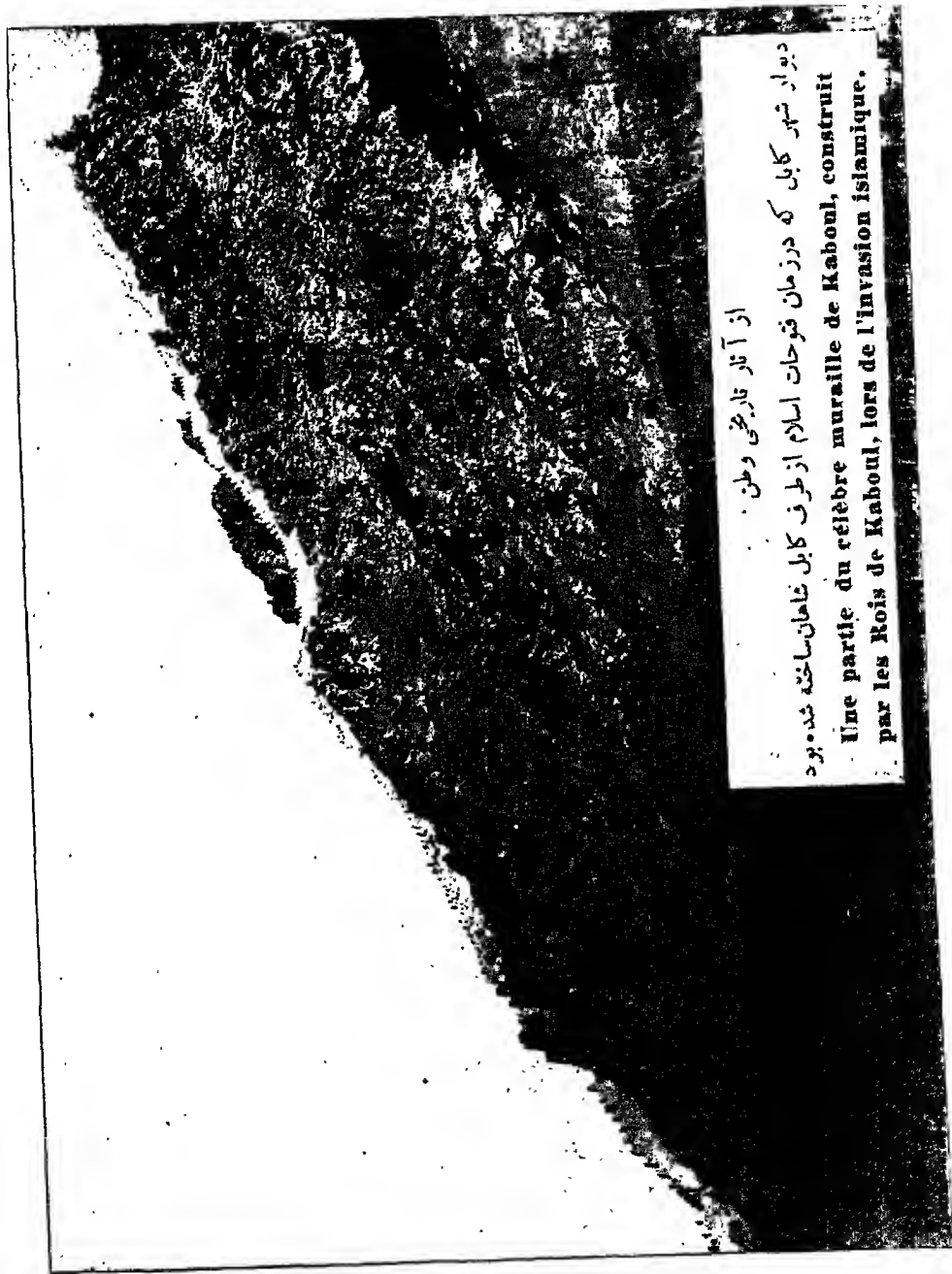
The chief passes of the Sulaiman range are: the Khyber, the Paiwar, the Tochi, the Gomal, the Bolan and Shorawak.

## RIVERS

Afghanistan, though well watered, has few large rivers for a country of such an extent. Except the Amu, in the extreme north and which forms the natural boundary between Afghanistan and Russian Turkestan, there is no river in the whole of the country which is not fordable throughout its course for the greater part of the year. Like the other countries of Central Asia, it is a closed basin, having no outlet to the open sea. With the exception of the Kabul and its tributaries and a few southern streams which flow into the Indus, all the rivers of Afghanistan are absorbed either inland or in the neighbouring countries. Most of them partake the character of torrents, and though they come down with great force with a large quantity of water, they soon run off or become small streams. The volume of water is greatly diminished by the drains which are made from them for the purpose of irrigating the fields, by which a large stream is sometimes entirely consumed before it traverses a long distance from its source. The rivers are in flood during spring, the rainy season. Though most of these rivers are not suitable for navigation, they possess great potentialities as sources of water power.

**The Amu-Darya.**—The old and classical name of this river is Oxus, which is derived from an old form, Wakhshu. Other names are (Pehlavi) Wehroth; (Chinese) Kpi Shu or Wurhu; (Arabic and Persian) Jaihun (a large river). The modern name is derived from the name of the town of Amul, later Amu and Amuyah.

The Amu serves as a natural boundary between Afghanistan and Russian Turkestan for about 400 miles. Rising in the plateau of the Little Pamir, which in winter, is a world of snow and ice, this river, which is among the most historical in Asia, flows through the depression of Central Asia and ultimately, after traversing more than 1,400 miles, falls into the Sea of Aral. In its upper course, it is generally known by the name of Panja or Five Rivers. Contributing to the volume of its upper waters are two principal streams, the Pamir and the Aksu. The trio drain the Pamirs; the Aksu uniting with the Panja at Kalai-wamar, the other



از آثار تاریخی وطن

دیوار شهر کابل که در زمان فتوحات اسلام از طرف کابل تا هامن ساخته شده بود.

Une partie du célèbre muraille de Kaboul, construit par les Rois de Kaboul, lors de l'invasion islamique.

THE FAMOUS WALL OF KABUL, CONSTRUCTED AT THE TIME OF THE MUSLIM INVASION



## RIVERS

at Langar-Kisht. The Pamir and the Aksu rise amid the glaciers which drain into Sari-qul lake (13,390), and Lake Chakmaktain (13,100). The Pamir flows through the Great Pamir, joining the Panja at Langer-Kisht.

The five rivers which make up the waters of the Panja or Upper Oxus are the Pamir, Panja, Aksu (or Mnrghab) Shakh, and Ghund.

The Oxus, is a very rapid river in its early course, At Bazai Gumbaz, and for a short distance along the Wakhan valley, the river slackens, until turning westward it recovers and tumbles swiftly forward. From Rang, which is a little east of Ishkashim, to Khorok in Shighnan, there is a perceptible increase in the current of the river.

The Oxus, in its passage through the Wakhan valley, presents a number of interesting contrasts. In its higher reaches, at first a tumbling mountain torrent, it becomes below Langar-Kisht, a slow lifeless stream so nerveless and placid that it cannot carry with it the stones which it has brought down from its upper sources. The eye meets here vast areas, covered by large quantities of these debris and detritus. But a little below this place as far as Ptuk, there is a belt of vegetation. The banks are covered with grass: there are many willows, white poplars, and here and there, impenetrable copses of camel thorn. Beyond Ptuk, once more the beneficent character of the river changes, and the banks reflect a waste of sand dunes and patches of drift sand. Even the mud deposit of the main stream appears to be exhausted.

The mountains at Langar-Kisht recede considerably on either side from the river and thus make room for a broad valley. But they come close again immediately west of Kalai Panja, forming a very narrow ravine through which the river can just pass. Beyond this narrow passage the valley expands once more and the river is divided into a number of arms dotted with little islands all covered with thorny bushes.

Between Dersai and Nut, the stream forces its way through such a narrow rocky ravine that the boom of the falling waters echoes throughout the valley. Below Nut the valley widens, and the banks of the river are covered with thick copses, the haunt of wild animals and the home of many birds.

Most of the tributaries of this river draw their water from the mountain system of the Hindu Koh. Their period of greatest activity begins in May, when

## AFGHANISTAN

the ice melts and the heavy snows break up. At such a moment a large volume of water sweeps through their shallow channels, carrying with it huge masses of stones and ice, and running with such a force as to make fording extremely difficult and dangerous. The main channel is so swollen that the great volume of water passing through its bed breaks its bounds and totally inundates the adjoining valleys.

At Kalai-Kum, the most northerly point of the river, it bends to the west, and striking a little south and then a little west, runs at right angles to the general trend of the mountains towards the more open valleys. The districts surrounding it are in distinct contrast with the desolation of the upper valleys. Owing to a milder climate of the locality, which encourages vegetation, many varieties of vegetables and fruits are cultivated.

From the point where the province of Kulab is separated by the Oxus from the Afghan districts of Rustagh and Kataghan, the river flows in an open country, and is no longer contained by the walls of the mountains. Numerous feeders appear on either bank at this point of its course. The Kulab, Surkhab, Kafirnihan, Surkhan and the Durban appear on the right bank, while on the left bank Badakhshan and Katghan dismiss the Kokcha, Kunduz and Akserai to a meeting with the main stream. Many of the streams are exhausted before they have an opportunity to effect a junction with the Oxus.

In the middle as well as in the lower reaches of the river little of the main stream is utilized for irrigation. It is not until it reaches Pimiak that any important diversion of the waters of the Oxus for cultivation is made. The bed of the Oxus in its lower reaches is muddy. It has been estimated that no less than 16,000,000 tons of sedimentary matter constantly pass down the channel to form a vast delta at its mouth, as well as to fertilize its banks, which from time to time are submerged. The river has changed its course very often. In the 14th century it was flowing into the Caspian Sea.

In the end of the 19th century, the Russian Government equipped a small fleet of steamers in this river. The present Afghan Government is also arranging for a flotilla. But even to this day most of the traffic is carried on by ferry boats.

**The Murghab (385 Miles).**—It rises in the mass of mountains connecting the eastern extremities of the Firoz Koh and Tir-Bandi Turkestan ranges. It flows in a westerly direction through the great valley separating these mountain chains,

## RIVERS

and after receiving the waters of numerous tributaries turns towards the north-west to pass the Afghan fortress of Bala Murghab and the post of Karawal-Khana. At the latter point it receives the waters of Kansar affluent. Continuing in a north-westerly direction it flows past Maruchak, lying on the right bank, where a short distance below, the Kashan flows into it. At Muruchak the river is the dividing point between Russia and Afghanistan for about 15 miles. The posts of Panjdeh and Aktepe are both situated upon the left bank of the river within the Russian territory. At Aktepe it receives the waters of the Kush river, which rises in the Parapomismus range, and from this point the Murghab flows in a due northerly direction to Merv, thence running dry in the sands of the Karakum desert.

The country, through which this river flows, is in the main, a mixture of desert waste and cultivated strip, with rising uplands, carpeted in spring by bright flowers and hidden in winter by heavy snows. South-west of Balamurghab the valley narrows to the dimensions of rugged outlines of a defile. Through this the river rolls, tumbling with thunderous clamour, towards Panjdeh, where it acquires a considerable breadth.

The swiftness of its current and the uncertainty of its depth with deep holes and masses of protruding rocks add to the hidden dangers from quicksands, and make the task of fording an intricate proceeding. Rafts and inflated skins are generally employed by the natives in crossing it.

**The Hari Rud (530 Miles).**—It takes its source from the Dai Zangi mountains, at a height of some 10,050 feet, near the western extremity of Koh-i-Baba. It is chiefly formed by the combination of two streams, Sari Jangal and Tangalab, which meet a little below the village of Daulat Yar (8,117). For a distance of about three hundred miles the Hari Rud flows from east to west, mostly through the fertile valley and charming scenery of the province of Herat, roughly parallel to the Parapomismus range. It flows a little (about 4 miles) to the south of the city. At Zindahjan, 30 miles west of Herat, it turns to north-west, passes by Kushan, and ultimately touches the Iranian border at Toman Agha, whence for a distance of some 60 miles it forms the natural boundary between the two Muslim countries—Afghanistan and Iran. It leaves the Afghan territory at the Zulfikar pass, and after irrigating the oasis of Tejend, it gradually dwindles away, till ultimately it loses itself in the sands. The province of Herat, the granary of Central Asia, owes its importance, undoubtedly, to this river.

## AFGHANISTAN

**The Helmand (625 Miles).**—It is the largest of the inland rivers, and runs through the west of the country. The name also takes the forms of Hirmand and Hilmand. Its ancient names are Etymander, Etymandoros, Erymanthus and Haetumat. It rises in an elevated valley on the western side of the Paghman range, a southern off-shoot of the Hindu Koh. In its preliminary course for more than 200 miles, it flows in a westerly direction through the heart of Hazara country. Thence it issues into the open and cultivated plains of the Durrani. Below Girishk, near the ruins of Bust, it receives the joint stream, the Arghandab-Taranak-Arghasan, which drains south-east Afghanistan. The Helmand then, enters a desert, which extends throughout its course till it terminates in the lake of Sistan. On approaching the Sistan desert, it suddenly turns north, and finally flows into the lake. The irrigation of Sistan is derived from this river.

The immediate banks of the river and the country within half a mile are, nearly everywhere, with the exception of the desert, fertile and in most places well cultivated. Though fordable for the most part of the year in most places, the Helmand is still a great river. Even in the dry season it is breast deep at the fords. At the time of snow-melting, it is deep and rapid. Inflated skins and toteen—a kind of raft, are used in crossing this river at its mouth. A concrete bridge is being built across it on the Kandahar-Herat road.

**The Arghandab.**—It rises in the Hazarajat Mountains, near Barihaq pass, at a place considerably to the south of the source of Helmand. It flows in south-westerly direction, and after crossing Kalati-Ghilzai, emerges into an open plain. It then irrigates the richest part of the Kandahar Province. It is a small stream in winter, but deep and rapid when swelled by the melting of snow. It is never more than 150 yards broad.

**The Khash Rud.**—It rises in Hazarajat, about 90 miles south-east of Herat. Near Dilaram it enters the district of Farah. After a course of some 150 miles, it passes near the village of Kaddah, in the country of Garmser, and ultimately empties itself in the Helmand Lake. It is a rapid river and larger than Arghandab. Other rivers which take their sources from the Hazarajat country and flow into the Sistan lakes are the Farah Rud and the Harut.

**The Kabul (316 Miles).**—It rises from a height of 14,079 feet in the Paghman mountains near the Unai Pass, 50 miles east of Kabul. At first it flows in an easterly direction, irrigates the villages of Taghri, Killai-Dervesh,



THE TOMB OF AMIR ABDUR RAHMAN KHAN,  
BOSTAN SARAI, KABUL.





## RIVERS

Jalrez, and Mamakai, and then suddenly changes its course and flows south-west for a distance of some 100 miles. Passing through the Verdak country it enters the Lalandar gorge, and making a circuit round the Karugh mountain, it flows through the fertile plain of Chahardeh. Here it receives the Paghman river. The joint stream, under the name of Rud-i-Kabul, passes through the Guzargah pass and flows through the heart of the capital. At Bagram, a few miles to the east of the city, the Lohgar river, which irrigates the Lohgar valley, flows into it. The Kabul after irrigating the vast plain lying east of the capital, enters the narrow gorge of Tangi Gharu. A few miles below it makes a great fall, called Mahipar. It then enters the plain of Sarobi, where the Panjsher and Mahipar flow into it from the north and from here it takes an easterly direction. After passing through the hilly country, north of Jigdalik, it enters the plain of Jalalabad, where it receives the Alishang and Alinghar of the Laghman valley on the north, and the Surkh Rud from the south. It flows to the north of the city. Near Kama the Kunar, coming from the north, flows into it. The river then flows to the east, roughly parallel to the Kabul-Peshawar road. After crossing Dekka, 42 miles from Jalalabad, it forces its way through the hilly country of Mohmand. It then enters the Peshawar district, near Michini. After receiving a few more tributaries in the plain of Peshawar, the Kabul falls into the Indus near Attock.

The Kabul is generally swift in its current, making navigation impossible. In its upper course it is very shallow, and sometimes in summer it totally dries up. Its water is greatly diminished, especially in the district of Kabul by the drains which are made from it for the purpose of irrigation. During early spring it is often flooded and is then called a mad river—Chamcha Mast. Near Jalalabad it is a great river, and fords are not so frequent. Rafts and inflated skins are generally employed in crossing it.

The ancient names of the river are—Kubha, Kophen, Kophus, and Koa. The Arab geographers also gave it various names.

**The Kunar.**—It rises in Pushtu Khur, near the peak of Belut Tagh, which contains the source of the Oxus. It issues from the southern side of the peak. It is here known by the name of Kashkar. After passing through the hilly country of Nuristan, it rushes with surprising violence into the Jalalabad valley, and joins the Kabul near Kama, 4 miles east of the city. Other important rivers of the country that flow into the Indus are the Kurram and the Gomal.

# AFGHANISTAN

## LAKES

In spite of its great size, Afghanistan has very few lakes. The most important of them are:—

Helmand and Godizerah, lying south-west on the Iranian border, are shallow salt-lakes. Abi Istadah is another small lake, about 80 miles to the south of Ghazni. Sari Kul or Lake Victoria lies to the extreme north, on Russian border. Shewah lies in Badakhshan, and is frozen for the greater part of the year.

## CLIMATE

Afghanistan is situated in the North Temperate Zone, between  $29^{\circ} 30'$  and  $38^{\circ} 30'$ , and has a continental type of climate. It is far removed from the moderating influence of the sea. There are no cooling sea-breezes to counteract the heat of summer, nor are there warm ocean currents and pleasant westerly winds to mitigate the extreme cold of winter. The prevailing climatic conditions are dryness combined with extremes of temperature. In those stretches which occur at high levels one gets some extraordinary conditions of temperature; places where the ground temperature in the sun may be over  $60^{\circ}$ , whilst it is still freezing in the shade. There are similarly enormous differences between day and night temperatures.

High up in any of the numerous and beautiful side valleys, or upon the meadowy slopes of the Hindu Koh, Spin Ghar or Koh-i-Baba, almost any gradation of climate is obtainable. Thus, while at Kabul (6,000 feet), in July, the mean temperature is about  $80^{\circ}\text{F}$ , in the valley of Paghman, at a height of 7,200 feet, the mean temperature would scarcely exceed  $60^{\circ}$ ; higher on the slopes of the Paghman mountain, the average temperature would not exceed  $50^{\circ}$ , while great extremes of cold nights might be met with.

In the height of summer, when the plain of Jalalabad is totally sultry and while the very wind is so hot as often to cause death of persons exposed to it, the Afghan Mont Blanc lifts its lofty head, covered with perpetual snow, immediately from the plain; the nearest hills are cold and pleasant, and the more remote ones covered with snow. A little to the west lies the tableland of Kabul, which enjoys the coolness and verdure of a temperate summer. This contrast is the theme of wonder to the travellers from a more uniform climate.

## CLIMATE

The winter of Jalalabad and Kandahar is very agreeable and scarcely colder than that of the Punjab, while the winters of the central plateau are as severe as those of Russia. Snow lies on the ground for three months during the year, while many of the peaks rise above the snow-line. In Herat the cold in winter is considerable, but the summer would be hot, were not the weather refreshed by the periodical wind from the west, which generally lasts for 120 days. The Garmser, on the lower Helmand, receives its name from the heat of its climate.

The coldest month of the year is the month of Dalv (January 21 to February 20), the mean temperature being 15°F., and the maximum 38° in the central plateau. The greatest cold is caused by extreme lowness of temperature during the continuation of cold wave which may remain for several days. At this time the temperature varies from a mean of 12° to a maximum of 20°F. In Kabul, where the snow lies upon the ground for about three months, the temperature sometimes falls to -10°F. At Ghazni snow lasts longer and traditions tell of disastrous snow-storms. The climate of the flat country to the south of Ghazni seems a little milder than that of the city itself.

One of the characteristics of the Afghan climate is the large amount of sunshine throughout the year. Almost cloudless skies are the rule in summer, and even in winter, clouds are less numerous than would be expected. The chill of winter is compensated for by the bright sunshine.

The summer heat, on the other hand, is everywhere great, especially on the Oxus and on the lower Helmand, where a summer shade temperature of 120°F. is usual. In Kabul, too, mercury rises to 100° in shade, and in Kandahar to 110°.

By the middle of March the winter breaks up. The spring is everywhere changeable and showery, often windy and cold. But by the beginning of May the sun begins to assert itself though, on the whole, the weather continues to be very pleasant until the middle of June, when the increasing heat drives most people to the country-side or places adjoining hills.

The autumn months are the pleasantest in the whole year, with clear, bright, but fairly cool days. From the middle of September to the beginning of December, cloudy or wet days are few and far between. In December there is often an early fall of snow, but it is not till about the middle of January that the main snowfall occurs. Enormous quantities of snow on the mountains and in the passes often cut off communications for a few days. The Kabul-Kandahar road is sometimes blocked

## AFGHANISTAN

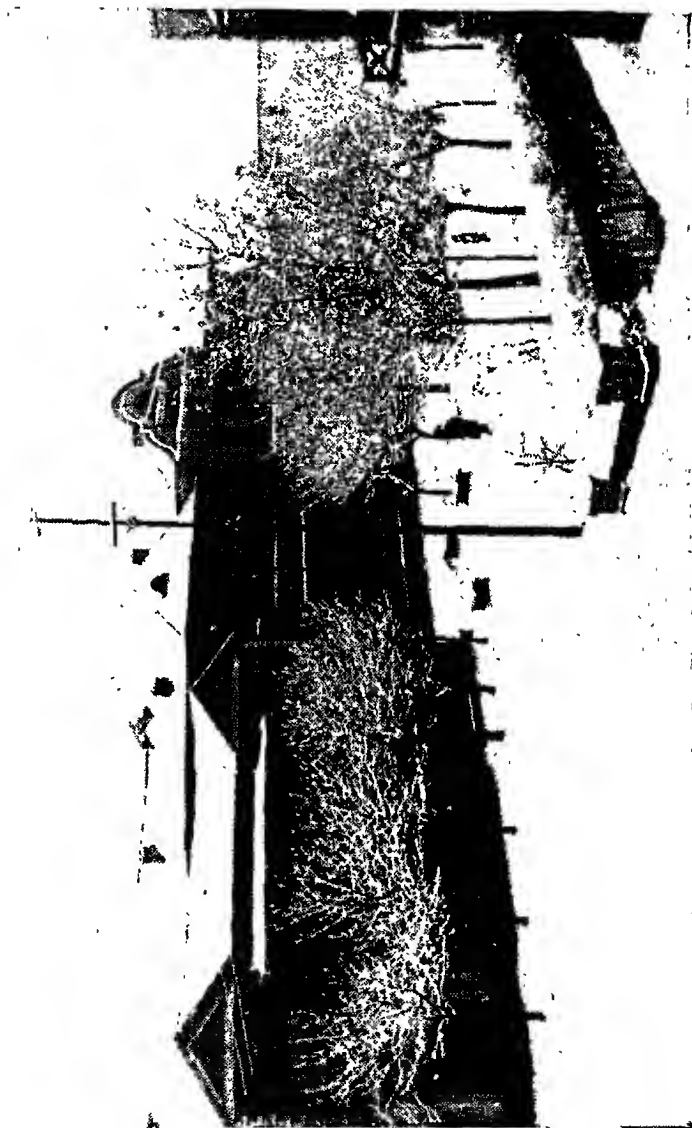
for traffic for a month or two. The present Government has imported many American caterpillars to keep the passes clear of snow.

The Afghan climate is noted for its extremes and great range between day and night, summer and winter. The variations are, however, less pronounced in the south-east, where the climate merges into that of India. But the monsoon which sweeps over India from June to September does not extend beyond the fringe of the mountains forming the Indo-Afghan frontier. It brings rain only to the valleys that lead down from Afghanistan into the Indus plain. Afghanistan gets much of its precipitation as winter snow, and a small but a very important contribution of rain in spring. The rainfall of the country is, therefore, not well-distributed and is much less than that of the Panjab. At Kabul the yearly amount seldom exceeds 15 inches, of which about 10 inches may be attributed to the period from January to April. The driest part of the country is the desert region to the south-west, where the annual rainfall is not more than 10 inches a year.

The dry summer conditions are ideal for the ripening of fruits; typical examples are the citrus fruits of Jalalabad—oranges and lemons; great varieties of deciduous fruits—apricots, peaches, plums, pears, and apple, as well as almond, fig, mulberry, walnut, pistachio and vine. Of grains certain types of wheat and barley grow well. A little reflection will reveal a certain incompatibility between the desirable sunny summers in the ripening of fruits or grains and the undesirable lack of moisture which so often goes with it. Hence it is pre-eminently in this country that irrigation by water from the snow-fed mountain rivers plays a great part in the economic development of the country.

Judging from the physique, strength and activity of the inhabitants, we should pronounce the climate favourable to human constitution. Many parts of the country are certainly remarkable for their salubrity.

The great difference between the seasons and the quickness with which they change has a striking effect on the customs of the inhabitants. In winter they are all clad in woollen garments, and in some places in clothes of felt and *posteen*—a large well-tanned sheepskin, with the long shaggy wool inside. They have fires in their homes and often sleep round stoves (*Sandali*), with the legs and parts of their bodies covered with large quilts thrown over the stoves so as to confine the heat. But when spring sets in, the snow suddenly disappears, the country is covered with young grass, the buds burst forth, and are soon followed by a



JADAH SHAHI (KING'S STREET), KABUL



## FLORA AND FAUNA

profusion of beautiful flowers. The inhabitants leave the towns, and go to the country-side for business or pleasure. They change the winter dress for a light cotton dress and at nights often sleep in the open air. ✓

Temperature and Rainfall of Kabul in 1936

Temperature and Rainfall.		January.	February.	March.	April.	May.	June.	July.	August.	September.	October.	November.	December.
Temperature F.	Maxi-mum.	49'6	56'8	67'5	78'8	94'8	97'2	99'9	96'5	97'2	80'5	68'2	61'6
	Mini-mum.	6'8	29'1	21'0	32'8	47'0	47'1	53'2	49'0	43'1	39'0	26'2	14'5
Rainfall (Inches).		0'56	2'13	0'78	2'01	0'36	0'03	0'00	0'25	0'00	0'00	0'02	2'01

## FLORA AND FAUNA

As recent investigations have shown, Afghanistan is one of the most important primary agricultural centres of the world, where a whole series of plants have originated. Nowhere else may be found such multifariousness of forms. With regard to the diversity of wheat, this country occupies the first place among all the countries of the world. Beans, peas, lentils and flax show a great variety. Northern Afghanistan is the realm of wild melon. Even the carrot, turnip and radish of this country are rich in varieties. Similarly different kinds of fruits have been observed in all stages from the wild growing plants to the most highly cultivated forms. The wide-spread of these plants in the country, the diversity of their varieties, the exceptionally high quality of some of them, the presence of the wild growing forms, all these show that Afghanistan is one of the principal regions, where the cultivated forms of these plants have originated.



## AFGHANISTAN

Afghanistan, on the whole, is an agricultural country. The attention of the people is directed to the land rather than to industries, and a large proportion of the population takes naturally to cultivation. Farming is divided into two classes:—

- (1) Plantation of fruits.
- (2) The growth of cereals.

Owing to the dry climatic conditions, Afghanistan yields profusion of luscious fruits. The Afghans, too, are a fruit-loving people, and, therefore, one can meet beautiful gardens all over the country, where conditions are favourable. In some parts of the country, fruit, both in its fresh and preserved or dried form, constitutes the staple diet of a large section of the people throughout the year. A rapidly growing export of fresh and dried fruits exists with India. Indeed, so important has this industry become that in the country round Kandahar and Kabul, a marked increase in the number of orchards and fruit-gardens has taken place within the last few years. The presence of railway with refrigerating compartments at New Chaman, makes the exportation of fresh fruit from Kandahar district not only possible but greatly profitable.

Fruit-farming is divided between orchard-fruits and those fruits which may be grown in fields on a large scale. In the first case we have apples, peaches, pears, almonds, apricots, plums, cherries, grapes, figs, quinces, pomegranates, and mulberry, in addition to walnuts, and pistachio which grow wild in the northern and eastern highlands. In the second group we have several varieties of melons, including musk, water and scented-melons and cucumbers.

Vegetable produce includes most of the domestic vegetables; while of the uncultivated vegetable products, the mustard, sesame, castor oil plant and asafoetida grow in great abundance.

In the greater part of the country there are two harvests; one, reaped in summer, called Bahari or the spring crop, is the result of autumn sowing and includes wheat, barley and certain varieties of peas and beans. The second harvest, called Tirmahi or Autumnal, is gathered in autumn from a spring sowing, and includes crops of rice, Indian corn, varieties of millets, mash (phaseolous mungo), tobacco, turnips, and maize, besides other grains of less importance. The loftier regions such as Hazarajat, Kabul, Asmar and Badakhshan have but one harvest.

In addition to these cereals, crops of madder, cotton, opium, clover, hemp,

## FLORA AND FAUNA

and lucerne are very largely cultivated. Clover, trefoil and lucerne form important fodder crops, and when properly irrigated, are said to afford ten to twelve cuttings in the season. They are given green to the cattle during the summer, and a large quantity is dried up and stored, to be used in winter.

Nearly half the acreage of the land under cultivation is occupied by irrigated crops, called Abi; while the other half, Lalmi, is entirely dependant on rain. The principal areas of non-irrigated lands are concentrated in northern Afghanistan. But in spite of its small percentage of irrigated area, the country holds *strikingly rich tracts of land, and displays an astonishing diversity of the most important crops.*

Northern Afghanistan represents an expanse comparatively little elevated (average height about 2,000 feet), with loess like deep soil, mostly arable, or readily accessible to cultivation. A great part of this region forms an immense pasture, where in summer comes in throngs all the living stock of the country. Here are reared the well-known Karakuli sheep. Every year millions of their newly born lambs are killed for their skins, which have a good market abroad, and from an economic point of view is the chief source of revenue.

Besides this vast pasturage, there are large tracts of irrigated lands round Maimana, Balkh, Mazar-i-Sharif, Aqchah, Andkhui, Daulatabad, Khanabad, Shibarghan, Faizabad and along the Kunduz river. The valley of Herat, fertile and well irrigated, yields no less than two crops a year. In old days it was called "the Granary of Central Asia."

A considerable part of the land in south-west Afghanistan is characterised by barren, stony and uncultivated soils. There are vast sandy tracts, called Dashti Bukwa and Registan of Sistan. The soil of Sistan consists chiefly of sand, mixed with clay. A part of the surface shows moving sands, the land is generally flat, but here and there the eye meets low sandy hills.

Between Ghazni and Farah, as well as in some parts of the Southern Province, the usual method of irrigation, owing to the shortage of water, is by means of Karez, a subterranean canal, and agriculture is concentrated on small tracts and chiefly in the narrow valleys of the mountains.

The districts of Jalalabad and Laghman, having comparatively moist and hot climate, are famous for the production of wheat, rice, sugarcane and cotton.

## AFGHANISTAN

The central mountainous region of Hazarajat, with a thin population and stony soil, is of small importance from an agricultural point of view.

**Wheat.**—Of the cultivated crops of the country the first place is occupied by wheat; then follow barley and rice. About 110 botanical varieties of wheat have been counted, and it is, therefore, supposed to be one of the most important primary agricultural centres of the world. No other country can show such a diversity of wheat.

The district of Herat has two famous varieties of wheat, known by the names of Zafrani and Shahnazi.

**Rye.**—Besides wheat Afghanistan is also supposed to be the original home of another crop, *i.e.*, rye. The Afghan rye is, on the whole, characterised by a pale yellow ear.

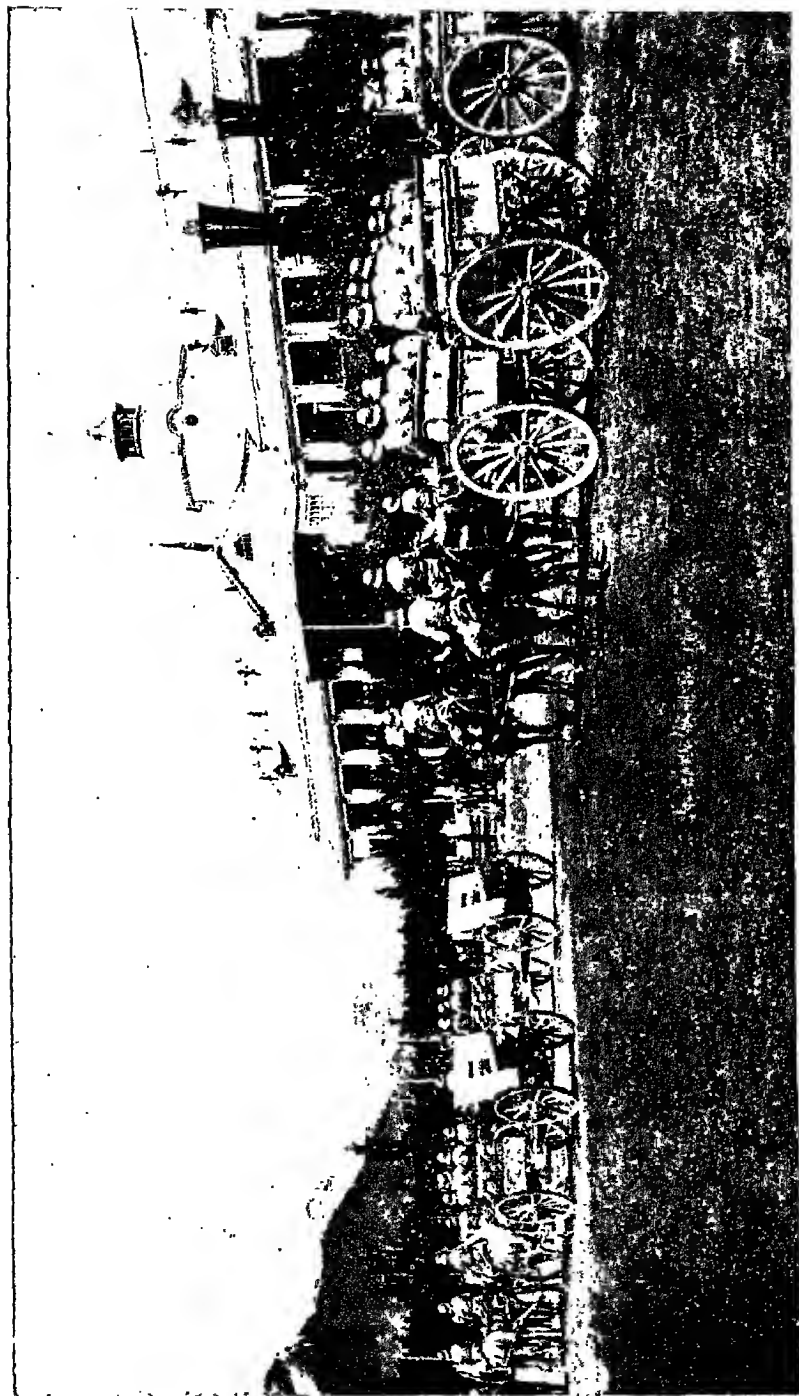
**Barley.**—It is widely cultivated all over the northern districts, and is represented by two varieties, with yellow glumes and with black ears. The first of these varieties predominates. Wild barley is also met with in some parts of the country, but the Afghan barley reveals no great diversity, and may be reduced to a few botanical varieties. It is chiefly grown as forage for horses and mules.

**Oats.**—Cultivated oats are rarely known in Afghanistan, while its wild forms are met with in great numbers.

**Rice.**—Afghanistan too, like India, is famous for the diversity of its rice which is generally divided into Luk, rough or thick, and Maheen, fine. The first group is characterised by a comparatively broader and shorter kernel. It is cultivated nearly all over the country. Maheen is grown chiefly in Laghman, Khanabad, Jalalabad and Kandahar. Laghman supplies all the rice for the Kabul market.

**Sugarcane.**—The principal regions where sugarcane is grown are the lowlands of Jalalabad, the lower course of the Kunar river, and the open valley of Laghman—all situated in the Eastern Province. Besides these places, it is also grown in some of the hotter places, particularly near Khanabad, Chakhansur and Farah.

**Cotton.**—The principal areas for cotton cultivation are concentrated along the Hari Rud, in the province of Herat, between Balkh, Tashkurghan and Aibak, that is the province of Mazar-i-Sharif and in the country round Khanabad, along the river



INDEPENDENCE DAY (MAY 27, 1938) AN AFGHAN ARTILLERY BEFORE THE ROYAL PAVILION



## FRUITS

Kunduz. Comparatively small areas are occupied by cotton in the district of Charikar, 40 miles north of Kabul. In view of its proximity to the capital, the district is developing rapidly. It is the centre of a home-spun fabric, the so-called Karbas, a thick rough cloth. In Kabul itself cotton is not grown, as it cannot reach maturity. The region next in importance is the province of Kandahar. A considerable quantity of cotton is grown in the Eastern Province.

This crop, till recent years, was of secondary importance in this country, but the present Government, fully alive to its importance, is encouraging its cultivation by every possible means and factories are being imported to work the produce. Early this year a great cotton factory was imported and it is now being planted at Puli Khumri, in the centre of northern cotton districts. Another small factory is planted at Jabul-us Siraj, 45 miles north of Kabul, in the district of Charikar.

The American cotton "uplands" has made considerable progress in Mazar-i-Sharif, Balkh, between Tashkurghan and Aibak. There is a very vast scope for the progress of this industry, for the natural and economic conditions are very favourable for cotton growing, and it is hoped that in a year or two the country will greatly benefit by the newly imported cotton mills.

## FRUITS

Afghanistan is famous for the production of some fine fruits. The chief horticultural regions of the country are found in Herat, Kandahar, Khanabad, Mazar-i-Sharif, Kabul, Faizabad and Jalalabad. Mulberry is grown nearly in every part of the country, but chiefly in the higher regions. The berries are often dried and ground in stone mills and made into small cakes called Talkhan. It has several varieties, white, pink, sometimes even of purple hue. Mulberry is also cultivated for sericulture. The State is now paying much attention to the cultivation of silkworms.

The gardens of Aibak, Herat, Mazar-i-Sharif and Faizabad are abundant with apricots, figs, quinces, pomegranates, pears and peaches; while plums and cherries play a secondary role. Almond, also, is the chief fruit of these districts. It is also largely cultivated in the Ghorband valley, 50 miles north of Kabul. Kandahar is the home of fine pomegranates, which are exported to India in great numbers. Another kind of pomegranate, called Bedana (seedless), is grown in the districts of Gandumak, Jigdalik and Tagab, and is chiefly exported to

## AFGHANISTAN

*via* Peshawar, but that of Kandahar is of exceptionally high quality, and reaches from 17 to 18 cm. in diameter. Large groves of this fruit are located along the Arghandab river. The pulp of the fruit is usually red, less frequently white. In Nuristan wild forms are also observed in great numbers, with small and extremely acid pulp. It is not more than 7 cm. in diameter, with comparatively small seeds.

The lowlands of Jalalabad, the lower course of the Kunar valley and Laghman, are characterised by sub-tropical fruit trees, such as lemons, oranges and the date-palm. Besides Jalalabad, the fruits of the date-palm also ripen in the Sistan district.

**Walnut** trees are also largely cultivated in the hilly districts. Three species of walnut occur in Afghanistan. Wild walnut grows abundantly in the Nuristan forests. The best kind of walnut is called Kaghazi (soft as paper) as its shell crushes in hand like paper.

**Apricot** is represented by multifarious varieties and is widely cultivated all over the country. In Kandahar one kind, which is very sweet and is known by the name of Shakarpara (sugar candy) is dried and exported. The varieties of peach differ in Afghanistan by the dimensions of fruits and stones. Some peaches with smooth skins are also met with.

**Almonds**, also, show great varieties, especially in the province of Herat, and the valley of Ghorband, where of sweet kernel predominates; bitter almonds are rarely met with.

**Apple** is of various kinds. The best kind is called Nazuk-Badan (soft-bodied). Another kind, known under the name of Tirmahi, is preserved and lasts till the beginning of spring. The fig is also cultivated extensively. It also grows in a wild state in northern Afghanistan, as well as Nuristan.

The chief grape-growing districts are Herat, Maimanah, Kandahar, Mazar-i-Sharif, and finally Kabul (Samti Shimali, extending from the north of the capital to Charikar and Gulbahar). It is also grown in small quantities in Farah and Sabzwar, Faizabad and Nuristan. Various kinds of grapes, from pure white to dark black, with different dimensions, shape and taste, are found, specially in Herat, Kandahar and Maimanah. The type of Kilk-i-Arusan, that is, the bride's finger, is not unfrequently met with. There are various kinds of Kishmish (raisins),

## FRUITS

white, red, black and green. Kandahar has a fine quality of raisin, of light yellow colour, with berries up to 2 cm., known by the name of Abjosh, water-boiled. It is chiefly exported to India, where it is much appreciated. In Herat there is a fine kind of grape called Lal, which has a very wide fame.

The wild fruit trees and shrubs play, by no means, an important part in the nourishment of the population, especially the pistachio, whose fruits constitute an important trade for the inhabitants of Kataghan-Badakshan and Herat. Besides the nuts their galls and gums are utilised. The pistachio-tree generally grows on the loess-hillocks, but its yields are very uncertain. In south-western Afghanistan and in the forest areas of the Eastern and Southern Provinces different species of hawthorns, black-berries, and currant bushes are found in great numbers. Whole thickets of barberry cover the river valleys of the high mountains around Badakhshan and Nuristan. The nuts of edible pine (*Pignolia*) are one of the chief articles of food for the people of Khost and Nuristan, and large quantities are exported to India.

The fruit of Afghanistan is, undoubtedly, a great boon to India, as well as to itself, and is one of the chief sources of the revenue.

**The Cultivation of Cucurbitaceae.**—In autumn the markets of Kabul, Kandahar and other chief towns of the country are overstocked with melons and water-melons. Cucurbitaceae are usually grown as irrigated crops. The first place is occupied by melon; then follow water-melon, pumpkin, cucumber and gourd. Small strips of land are occupied by luffa.

Northern Afghanistan is the home of wild-melon, a weed found in the crops of maize, sorghum and cotton. Sometimes it may be observed outside the crops, along the river banks and roads. All the different kinds of the cultivated melons are found here; some of them are said to be so delicate that they would crack if a rider were to pass beside them very swiftly, and most of them are so sweet that one has to take nearly half an inch of the inner layer off the slice before eating it.

On the whole expanse of Sistan, from Farah right upto the Iranian border, the wild water-melon is met with. In the deserts of Helmand and Bukwa, on Kandahar-Herat road, vast sandy tracts are covered with the growth of these wild water-melons. Thousands of small water-melons, of the size of an orange, are



## AFGHANISTAN

scattered all over the land. In winter the fruits dry, and are then driven by the storm over the desert like balls.

The cultivated melons vary according to the shape, colour, and size of their seeds. In the Kabul market usually four species are to be found,—Gurgak, Garmah, Sardah and Turkestani. The last named is the sweetest of all and is green in colour.

Water-melon, too, is of various kinds. Some sorts of water-melons with white flesh are of frequent occurrence. In Talukan, northern Afghanistan, there is a kind of water-melon with orange rind, resembling a pumpkin in appearance. The total sugar content of this is said to be low, about 5·8<sup>0</sup>/<sub>10</sub>.

No great diversity of pumpkin is observed here. It is chiefly of brownish colour.

## VEGETABLES

Nearly all vegetable crops are cultivated here. Kabul and Kandahar are distinguished by high development of vegetable growing. The most important of them are carrot, radish, egg-plant, spinach, cabbage, cauliflower, beet-root, lettuce, onion and garlic. In Kabul, Herat and Kandahar potato and tomato are also widely cultivated. Afghanistan has a species of wild carrot, but its sugar content is comparatively low.

The turnip is spread in every part of the country. The external colour of the root varies from place to place; light red, or dark-pink forms prevail. Radish is also widely cultivated, and as regards the shape of the leaves and roots, the Afghan radishes show, on the whole, a great diversity. Onion and garlic are extensively grown, especially near Herat, where various forms, red, white and yellow, of different shapes and sizes, may be observed. The wild onion is also met with in some hilly districts, especially in Pamir and Nuristan. Garlic also occurs in a wild state. The egg-plant is extensively grown. As regards the shape and colour of the fruit, considerable differences are observed. The multifariousness of varieties, exhibited by the plant in Afghanistan, points to its proximity to its natural home.

The beet-root is not extensively grown, and it is here cultivated exclusively



MINISTRY OF WAR, KABUL



## VEGETABLES

as a vegetable crop. The sugar content is not high. Leaf-vegetables known as Sabzijat, are abundantly used by the people. Spinach is grown all over the country. A great number of botanical forms is known. With regard to its quality the Afghan spinach does not stay behind the European standard varieties. Wild species also occur.

Lettuce is grown in considerable quantity near towns and is used as salad.

**Oleiferous Plants.**—Plants cultivated for the sake of oil show a great diversity in this country, and may be arranged, according to importance, in the following order:—colza, flax, *eruca sativa*, *sesamum*, safflower, mustard, castor, bean, hemp and poppy. The most widely spread of all these is colza, which is chiefly cultivated in the Eastern Province. Oil extracted from this plant is chiefly used for purposes of illumination, less frequently for food.

Mustard is not so widely cultivated. *Eruca sativa* is chiefly cultivated in the province of Herat. Cress is cultivated as a salad and medicinal plant, rarely as an oleiferous plant. No less than six kinds of flax may be obtained in this country. It is chiefly grown for the sake of oil. *Sesamum* is cultivated especially in the lower and medium zones, ascending not higher than 1,900 meters.

**Gram and Forage Leguminosae.**—Leguminosae are grown on a large scale. In the irrigated districts they occupy a considerable part of the acreage under crops. Especially conspicuous is the vast area of the cultivated leguminosae in the province of Herat. Beans, lentils, peas, and alfalfa cover nearly 1/4 of the sown acreage. To the north of Herat towards the Kalai-Naw, wide tracts of land are occupied by irrigated and non-irrigated crops of peas, beans and alfalfa.

The insufficient herbaceous vegetation of the country has induced the farmer to the sowing of artificial forage crops. The chief of them are alfalfa, lucerne, madder and clover. The last is abundantly cultivated all over the country. Alfalfa is a perennial plant lasting 8 to 9 years, and not unfrequently yielding 4 to 6 cuts a year. It is an irrigated plant, requiring a large amount of water. The wild-growing castor bean is sometimes found on the banks of the Kunar river. The acreage under cultivated beans is insignificant, and it is chiefly cultivated for lamp oil, or is used as purgative.

## AFGHANISTAN

Wild-growing weed-hemp occurs in large quantity in Eastern Afghanistan, Nuristan and in the Kunar river.

**Medicinal Plants.**—The country is said to be extremely rich in medicinal plants. The following plants occur in most of the districts:—*Linum usitatissimum*, *cannabis sativa*, *carthamus tinctorius*, *ricinus communis*, *foeniculum officinale*, *anethum copticum*, *carum carvi*, *carum sogdianum*, *pimpinella anisum*, *ocimum basilicum*, *nigella sativa*, *plantago ispaghula*, *cassia fistula*, *terminalia*, *areca catechu*, *curcuma*, *zedoaria*, *myristica fragrans*, *myrtus communis*, *nardostachys jatamansi*, *glycyrrhiza glabra*, *artemisia cina*, *asafoetida* and *liquorice*. Besides these, there are various other medicinal plants which still await the investigation of the botanist.

The *asafoetida* plant is found wild in the hills in many parts of the country between Kandahar and Herat. It requires no attention with the exception of that which is necessary for extracting the gum. It is a low bush, with long leaves, which are generally cut off near the bottom of the stem. A kind of milk flows from the part cut, and generally hardens like opium. Vast quantities of this drug are exported to India. The chief poppy-growing districts are the province of Herat, and northern Afghanistan, specially the province of Kataghan. The opium content of the Afghan poppy is very great.

Saffron is grown in the Herat Province.

## FOREST VEGETATION

The forest vegetation of the country is extensive and varied. The main ranges of the Spin Ghar (Mont Blanc) and Asmur in Nuristan are covered with dense forests of conifers. From an elevation of 6,000 to 10,000 feet grow large trees, such as *cedrus deodara* (the deodar), *abies excelsa*, *pinus longifolia* (turpentine pine), *pinus piaster* (cluster pine), *pinus pinen* (the edible pine) and *larix communis* (the larch). Besides these, yew, hazel, juniper, walnut, wild peach and almond trees are also frequently met with. Under the shade of these, at an altitude from 5,000 to 9,000 feet, grow several varieties of rose, honeysuckle, currant, gooseberry hawthorn and herbage. The lemon and wild vine are also very common. The walnut and oak descend to the secondary heights, where they become mixed with ash, *khinjuk*, *arbor-vitæ*, commercial indigo, dwarf laburnum, etc. Lower again and down to 3,000 feet, grow wild olive, species of rock-rose, wild privet,

## FLOWERS

acacias, mimosas, barberry, wild palm and zizyphus. Trumpet flower, sissu, savadora ousica, verbenas, are frequently met with. Labiate composite and umbelliferous plants are also most common. Ferns and mosses are confined to higher ranges, whilst the lower terminal ridges are scantily clothed with an almost wholly herbal vegetation.

The important forest productions are timber, resin and pignolia. From Asmar timber is floated to Peshawar district, while in Jaji, on the western extremity of Spin Ghar packed ponies are employed for transportation. Kabul receives its supply of timber chiefly from the Southern Province.

**Wild Plants.**—On the dreary tableland near Kandahar and over less elevated valleys many plants, such as papilionaceous leguminosæ, the camel-thorn, milk-vitch, astragalus in several varieties, spiny rest-harrow, the fibrous roots of which often serve as a tooth-brush, are largely met with. Besides these, there grow plants of sub-family mimosæ, such as the sensitive mimosa, rosebay, wild laburnum the common wormwood; also certain orchids and several species of salsola. Rue and wormwood, are used for medicinal purposes. The lipad, Spand as they call it, has a nauseous odour, which is believed by the common people to keep off evil spirits. Reeds and rushes grow wild in the marshes and along the banks of streams.

In the highlands of Kabul the wild rhubarb grows widely, and is considered as an important luxury. The bleached rhubarb, called Rawash, which has a very delicate flavour, is obtained by covering the young leaves as they sprout with loose stones or empty jars. Leaf-stalks are gathered and carried for sale. It is consumed both raw and cooked. Mushrooms and other fungi are largely used as food. Mana, which is also of several kinds, is sold in the bazaar. One called, Turanjabin, appears to exude in small round tears from the camel thorn, and also from the dwarf-tamarisk; the other, Shirkhisht as they call it, is obtained in large grains and irregular masses or cakes from a tree called *sirhchob* (blackwood).

## FLOWERS

Various kinds of flowers grow well in this country. In early spring hosts of mauve primulas like cowlip balls, and more delicate pink ones, purple and white anemones, bright little gentians, *Arghawan* (of crimson colour, which grow wild on

## AFGHANISTAN

mountain slopes) bring colours to the bare spaces left by melting snow even before the grass springs. A few days after, the valleys burst into blue, white and mauve irises, and white and golden narcissus, the jessamine and crocus. The pink and crimson tulips shake their dainty heads among the green wheat fields. Then comes the turn of other flowers, such as pansies, petunia, forgetmenots, campanulas, hyacinth, monkshod, larkspur, sunflowers, marigold, columbines, gamberry-balls, bugloss, ranunculus, saxifrage, poppies, balsams, orchis, wild rose, clematis, lords-and-ladies, mallows, marsh-marigold, honey-suckle, and various kinds of roses as well as some of the Alpine flowers. It is also very rich in wild flowers, such as thyme, mint, rest-harrow, hawkbit, bright-eye, speed-well, champions, buttercups and daisies.

It seems, rather, impossible to exhaust the list.

## ANIMALS

Afghanistan is noted for its wild animals. The most important of these are wolf, fox, hyena, wild dog, wild cat, jungle cat, common leopard, small Indian fox, mongoose, wild sheep, wild ass, mole, talpidae, Indian shrew, collared hedgehog, bats, jerboa, gerbit, pica and hare. The wolves are particularly formidable during winter in the cold districts, when the snow lies deep on the ground and they cannot get anything to eat. They often form troops and, coming down from hills, prowl near villages, frequently destroying cattle, and sometimes even attacking men. The villagers use various methods to defend themselves. When one of them is pursued by a wolf, he, having no fire-arms to frighten him off, generally employs the following method to get rid of his enemy. Tying one of his shoes at the end of his turban, and holding the other end in his hand, he lets the shoe trail after him. The wolf coming near his victim is attracted by the shoe and tries to catch it, but finding it moving forward leaps aside. So this goes on for a long time; the shoe keeps him busy. In the meanwhile the poor villager reaches his destination, where the wolf, finding his life in danger, makes for the neighbouring hill.

Bears are also very common in all the woody mountains, but they seldom quit their haunts. They are of two colours, black and dirty white. The tiger is found in the Kunduz forest, near the district of Badakhshan. The common leopard is found nearly in all parts of the country; and the *cheetah* or hunting leopards are mostly met with in the desert stretches.

## ANIMALS

The mountains, specially to the east and north, hold several species of the goat family, notably the markhor, oorial and ibex. There is a fine kind of wild sheep in the Afghan Pamir, usually known by the name of *Ovis Poli*, whose horns form one of the most prized trophies in the sportsmen collection. These wild sheep, the largest of the class, whose long curved horns often measure 60 inches in length, were first made known to Europe by the Venetian traveller, Marco Polo, who visited the Pamir in the 13th century on his way back to his native land, and from whom the sheep derives its German name. Deer is also of two kinds, one called *Kohi* (of mountain) is found mostly in the central plateau on the mountain sides; the other called *Dashti* (of plains) are mostly met with in the deserts of Bukwa, Chakhansur, bordering the Sistan Lake, in the country round Herat and the northern plain.

Of the domestic animals the cow, camel, horse, pony, sheep, goat, dog, cat and donkey are the most common. The horses claim the first notice of all the domestic animals. A considerable number is bred in every part of the country, but those of Kataghan and Mazar-i-Sharif are very fine. A very strong and useful breed of ponies called *Yabu* is also reared in different parts of the country. They are used for carrying luggage, and can bear a great load. There are different kinds of sheep, but two of them are important, *Turki* and *Ghilji*. The former is reared chiefly in the northern districts and is much taller and stronger than the latter. There is another kind of sheep, called *Karakuli*, which is reared for the sake of its lamb-skin. The Afghan sheep is remarkable for its tail, a foot broad, and almost entirely composed of fat.

There is a kind of beautiful cat, known by the name of *Baraqi*, which has long brilliant hair. Next in importance is the grey-hound of Ghazni district.

There are about 124 species of birds. The goose and duck shooting is excellent in the late autumn and cold weather. There are several varieties of partridges and pheasants. Some of them have beautiful plumage, *Murgh-i-Zarin* (the golden bird) being most important of them. There are various kinds of pigeons, green, blue, and grey; and cooing doves and cuckoos. Hosts of little birds are to be seen, as well as brilliantly coloured ones, like the golden oriole, the paradise fly-catcher, with its floating tail like silver ribbon, the king-fisher, and various kinds of bulbul and singing birds.



## AFGHANISTAN

### IRRIGATION IN AFGHANISTAN

Four principal methods of irrigation are generally employed here.

(1) **Source Irrigation**, that is, by means of streams, which get water from the melting of snow. This type is generally confined to the high mountain districts. The inhabitants of these districts show great skill in conducting water along the ledges.

(2) **Irrigation by Dams**.—The dry summer conditions necessitate the construction of dams or water storage reservoirs, to hold up flood waters. Remains of dams constructed by the ancient kings of the country are still to be seen in most parts of the country. Four of them, said to be constructed by Sultan Mahmud Ghaznawi (997—1030) are found in the suburbs of Ghazni. One of them has been recently reconstructed, and is now known by the name of Band-i-Siraj, or Siraj's Dam. The present Government, realising fully the importance of such dams in this country, has completed nearly half a dozen within the space of these few years, and a very large barren area has been converted into a smiling field. The construction of these water-reservoirs has greatly improved the condition of the peasantry, and this creation of new acreage has, undoubtedly, been a strong inducement for the unsettled nomadic tribes to adopt a sedantry and peaceful mode of life.

(3) **Karez Irrigation**.—It means the conducting of water into underground canals for purposes of irrigation. The system is in vogue in various parts of the country, chiefly at the foot of the mountains and in the broad valleys surrounded by hills. The spot, where the water is to issue, must always be at the foot of a slope extending to a hill, and the ground must be examined to ascertain whether there are springs, and in what direction they lie. When the spot is fixed, a very shallow well is sunk, and another of great depth is made at some distance up the slope. A succession of wells is made in this manner, and connected by a subterraneous passage from well to well. Many springs are discovered during this process, but the workman stops them, until he has finished the last well, when he opens the springs, and the water rushes through the channel, rises in the wells to the height of its surface, and is poured out from the lowest into a watercourse which conducts it over the fields. When a Karez is once constructed its wells are of no further use, except to allow a man to descend occasionally to clear

## INDUSTRIES

out the channel. The distance between the wells varies from 50 to 100 yards. The number of wells and consequently the length of a Karez depends on the number of springs met with. Some of them are many miles in length.

(4) In some parts of the country Persian wheel is also used for irrigation.

## INDUSTRIES

Industrially, Afghanistan is still very backward. With the exception of carpet-weaving other industries are of no great importance. With a view to develop its natural resources and to utilize the produce, the Afghan Government has taken all the necessary steps. It has recently imported a large number of mills, especially of cotton-weaving and sugar-making. Great efforts are being made to supply the people with all the necessary information about their arts and professions, and to encourage them by every means possible to improve and increase their output. A cotton mill was planted at Jabul-us Siraj, 45 miles north of Kabul, in 1936. Another cotton mill, but much bigger, was imported early this year, and now it is being planted at Puli Khumri, 254 miles north of the capital, in the centre of cotton districts. At Kandahar also there is a mill for the manufacture of woollen goods.

**Carpet-weaving.**—Each town has its own particular manufacture, and most have some special weave of carpets. The patterns of these are generally more elaborate than those made by the tribes; the large places being filled in with rambling sprays of flowers, arabesques or inscriptions. The carpets are woven on upright looms, in front of which weavers squat on a plank. A man calls out pattern, so many knots of this colour, so many of that, so many of another. The knots are tied on the threads, which pass length-ways down the carpet. Some of the bigger carpets take years to make.

For hundreds of years Afghanistan has been famous for its carpets, which are highly valued in foreign markets, for their beauty, durability and brilliancy. The old ones were all dyed with vegetable dyes prepared in the country, and although they were made hundreds of years ago, their colours are still fresh, rather brighter than they had been at first. A few years ago some of the weavers took to using aniline dyes imported from Europe, as they were cheaper, and quicker to use, but the colours produced were crude and glaring when new, but soon faded. The Government has now taken prompt measures to improve the quality

## AFGHANISTAN

of the carpet and to restore the standard. With this view the import of cheap dyes is forbidden ; special permission is to be obtained to import dyes. Besides giving free instructions to the carpet weavers of the country, the Government has started a school of carpet-weaving in the capital.

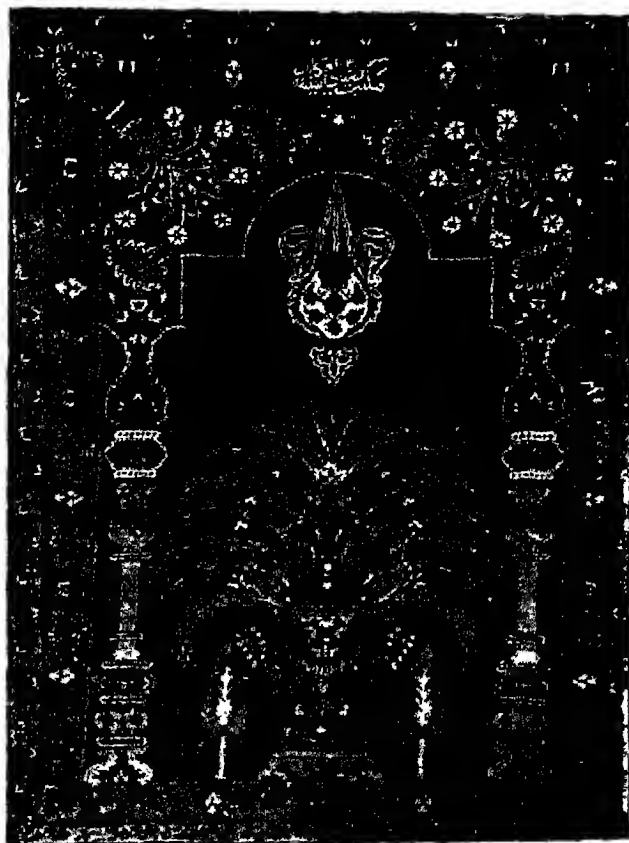
The chief carpet manufacturing towns of the country are situated in the north. They are Herat, Andkhui, Mazar-i-Sharif and Danlatabad. The last named town is very famous for its fine carpets.

**Postins.**—The manufactured sheepskin coats (*pelisse*) is a flourishing industry, specially at Ghazni. One class comprises small coats with short sleeves and requires one or two skins ; another description reaches to the knees and is furnished with full sleeves, fitting close to the arms. This takes 4 to 5 pelts. A third pattern forms a large loose cloak of capacious dimensions, extending from head to heel, and furnished with long and loose sleeves. Usually the edges and sleeves of the coats are embroidered with yellow silk. These *postins* are well-adapted to the climate of the country.

The home-industry of cotton fabric is widespread. Whole districts are occupied in manufacturing a sort of thick rough cloth, the so-called *Karbas*, serving for the clothes of the poorest classes of the country. The home-spun is also used for shawls, specially in the Eastern Province, where an embroidered shawl costs no less than 40 Afghanis. No less widespread is the home manufacture of wool. The Hazaras and Heratis are very skilful in this line. In Herat they make a certain sort of woollen cloth, called *Kurk*, which is sold at the rate of 100 to 200 Afghanis per piece of 8 yards. Shawls and blankets are woven in different parts of the country, but very little of them is exported. In Herat very beautiful silks and brocades, called *Kanawez*, are woven.

Rosaries are manufactured at Kandahar from soft crystallized silicate of magnesia. This is quarried from a little hill at Shah Maqsd, about 30 miles north-west of the city. The stone varies in colour, from a light yellow to a bluish white, and is generally opaque. The most popular kind is the straw-coloured and semi-transparent.

At Kabul there are factories for the manufacture of leather, boots, hosiery, woollen cloths, matches, furniture, stone-works, etc. The Government arsenal and mint are also located in this city.



A CARPET MADE BY THE STUDENTS OF ARTS COLLEGE,  
KABUL.



## MINERALS

## MINERALS

The potential mineral resources of the country are considerable, but so far only a few of them are worked. The chief difficulty till late years, was the absence of good roads, which generally impeded any rapid advance in the way of any mineral exploitation. The present Government, alive to the fact how far the development of these mineral resources is essential to modern metallurgical and chemical industries, is very keen to exploit them. Good lorry roads have been constructed all over the country to facilitate transport, and mineralogists, both Afghans and foreigners, have been appointed to reconnoitre the mountains. It is hoped that in the near future these natural resources will allow considerable development. Some of these geological experts believe that Afghanistan will, some day, become of considerable importance from the miners' point of view. The country is found to be immensely rich in all the useful minerals. Several important mines of iron ores and coal have been discovered. There are a good many signs of oil bearing areas. Important oil-fields are available in the northern districts, specially at a place called Tirpul, west of Herat.

Great changes are likely to take place in the future with regard to the economic geography of the country, owing to the discovery of these oil-fields.

The various minerals so far located and the localities in which they are found are tabulated as follows :—

### Gold—

- (1) Three miles from Kandahar.
- (2) Near the village of Haijah, Uruzgan District.
- (3) Alluvial gold is obtained in the rivers of Laghman and Kataghan.

### Silver—

In the valley of Ghorband, near the Salt-Spring.

### Coal (Lignite)—

- (1) Talao-Barfak, north of Bamian.
- (2) Darahi Soof, Mazar Province.
- (3) Kirmak, near Shash-holang Pass.
- (4) Peer Kotaki and Kawian mountains, near Aastin Takht.
- (5) Kohi Tiran, Shahi Kot.

## AFGHANISTAN

- (6) Narin, Kataghan Province.
- (7) Herat, near Kokran.
- (8) Khaki-Jabbar and Khud Kabul, near Kabul.
- (9) Sanjoor, Herat Province.
- (10) Khost, Southern Province.

### Iron—

- (1) Paghman, near the Ministry of Trade Buildings, Practically a hill of iron ore extends for many miles—up to Kohnah Khumar, a distance of some 18 miles.
- (2) The Red Pass, near Chihal Dukhtaran, Herat Province.
- (3) Jabal-us-Siraj.
- (4) Besud-i-Hazarajat.
- (5) Near Deh Sabz.
- (6) Kol Barak, near Istaliff.
- (7) Sang-i-Nawishta, near Kabul.
- (8) Jadran, Southern Province.
- (9) Maimanah.

### Petroleum—

- (1) Tirpul, near Herat.
- (2) Maimanah and some places in Mazari Province.

### Copper—

- (1) Dara-i Nur, Imam Sahib, Kataghan Province,
- (2) Koh-i-Surekh (Red Mountain) Munari Chakari, 8 miles south of Kabul.
- (3) Chahar Asia, near Kabul.
- (4) Chihal Sutoon, two miles south of Kabul.
- (5) Firingil, Ghorband.
- (6) Uruzgan.
- (7) Yakhdarah
- (8) Mundah Mountain, Soof Pass, Mazar-i-Sharif.
- (9) Jar Ali Mountain, Panjsher.
- (10) Hussain Mountain, Khurd Kabul.
- (11) Musair, 8 miles south of Kabul.
- (12) Kohnah Khumar, 20 miles west of Kabul.

## MINERALS

### Sulphur—

- (1) Saighan.
- (2) Kahmard.
- (3) Ghabar Mountain, Kataghan Province.
- (4) Maidan, 16 miles west of Kabul.
- (5) Hissarak-i-Ghilzai.

### Rubies—

- (1) Arghandi Pass, 12 miles west of Kabul.
- (2) Jigdalik, 50 miles east of Kabul.

### Asbestos—

- (1) Hashim Khel, Khogyani District.
- (2) Hootak Mountain.
- (3) Bagwal Mountain, Tokhi District.
- (4) Jadran.
- (5) Gholkol Mountain, Uruzgan.

### Lead—

- (1) Hazarajat, in several places.
- (2) Ghorband Valley, at Frinjl.
- (3) Mianishin Mountain, Uruzgan.
- (4) Mirak, Soof Pass.

### Quartz—

- (1) Uruzgan.
- (2) Nazian Pass, Shin war District.

### Lapis-Lazuli—

- (1) Broon Mountain, Hazarajat.
- (2) Ghazan, Badakhshan.
- (3) Badakhshan, in several places.

### Mica—

- (1) Khwaja Bughra Mountain.
- (2) Koh-i-Baba, Sang-i-Wali.
- (3) Siah Bini, near Kabul.



## AFGHANISTAN

### Graphite—

- (1) Kurugh Mountain, Chahardeh, Kabul.
- (2) Kai, Shinwar District.
- (3) Ghazah, Koh-i-Surkh.

### Marble—

- (1) Surkhah, near Herat.
- (2) Kurugh Mountain, Chahardeh.
- (3) Hazarajat, in several places.
- (4) Miamanah.

### Nickle—

Red Mountain, Jadran District.

### Antimony—

Hazrat-i-Said, Badakhshan.

### Slate—

Southern Province, in many places.

### Salt—

- (1) Shor Tappa, Mazar Province.
- (2) Tashkurghan.
- (3) Ishkashim, near Talukan.
- (4) Gulfagin, Kataghan Province.
- (5) Qarlag, near Badakhshan.
- (6) Chal, near Talukan.
- (7) Andkhui.

Beside these there are innumerable other mines of lesser importance.

## EXPORTS AND IMPORTS

The chief items are :—

### Exports

- (1) Furs and skins. (Karakuli, fox, stone martin, altai, *kirsay*, sheep, goat, cow, camel and horse).
- (2) Intestines, guts, wool, feathers and fleece.

## EXPORTS AND IMPORTS

- (3) Fruits, dried and fresh. Syrup, juice, vinegar.
- (4) Carpets, rugs, curtains, blankets, *Postins*, shawls, saddle bags.
- (5) Opium and tobacco.
- (6) Timber, resin, pignolia.
- (7) Manna, currants, coriander, fennel, gum, asafoetida, liquorice, and many other medicinal plants and seeds.
- (8) Cotton.
- (9) Lapis-lazuli.

### Imports—

#### (1) *Agricultural Products* :—

Tea (green and black), coffee, cocoa  
Sugar, and all sorts of sweets and biscuits.  
Tobacco, cigarettes, cigars.  
Pepper, tumeric, cardamom, and various other spices.

#### (2) *Mineral Products* :—

Precious stones, cement, coal, mercury, gold, silver, iron, copper, steel, zinc, brass, platinum.  
Petrol, kerosene oil, candles, mobil-oils, asphalt.

#### (3) *Manufactured Articles* :—

Machineries, motor cars and lorries, mills.  
Sewing machines, arms and ammunitions, aeroplanes.  
Instruments, apparatuses, appliances, telephones, telegraphs and radios.  
Dynamos and electric goods.  
Watches, spectacles, glasses, binoculars.  
Drugs, medicines and surgical instruments.  
Textiles, cotton, woollen, silks and yarns.  
Hosiery, sweaters, pullovers, underwears, gloves, towels, neck-ties.  
Cycles and sports goods.  
Utensils and cutlery.  
Stationery, office requisites and books.  
Perfumeries.  
Footwear, boots, shoes, gloshees and leather.  
Building materials and furnishings.

# AFGHANISTAN

## THE PEOPLE

Mostly they are of the original Indo-European stock, but like the people of other countries, they, too, are a strange mixture of races and languages. Despite the medley of races and tongues, the Afghans form one nation, and are united to live and die in defence of their Fatherland. Love of country and love of freedom form the bond of union among the peoples.

Among the fundamental traits of its people are simplicity, courtesy, hospitality, love of nature, and a high sense of honour and patriotism. They are extremely religious. Their ideal of progress seems to consist in a proper balance of material advancement and spiritual renovation. It permits of the assimilation of the substance of the main cultures of the world, without impairing its national individuality. They want to keep up a spiritual civilisation on an even keel with material progress, realising that the European civilisation, with all its great achievements in science and art and other departments of knowledge, is wanting in this respect.

Closely associated with their traditional love of freedom, is the Afghans' love of nature, of mountains, hills, valleys and flowers. The Afghan has a very keen sense of honour and an intense loyalty to his king and country, which are manifested in many ways, some of them appear very unusual to foreigners.

In present-day Afghan life sports and physical culture occupy an important part. The people are strongly sports-minded, and this can be seen by the interest they take in all the manly sports. Even an ordinary school match arouses such frenzy in the public that hundreds upon hundreds take the trouble of going many miles to witness it. In every park, in every vacant place in the cities, different kinds of games are played, and there is always a crowd to see them. Sportsmanship is highly developed among the Afghans. In 1936, for the first time in its history, the Afghans took part in the Olympics. This shows how the present Government encourages sports in this country.

But what seems to impair the fine sense of sportsmanship of the Afghan is his intense nationalism. In sports, as in every other thing, he never forgets that he is an Afghan, and according to the traditions of his country, should never lose a contest or fight, whether in his own land or abroad. Even when they play with other peoples on their own grounds they make as true and loyal and patriotic representatives of their own country. Here they are often too apt to lose the true



BUZKASHI, A NATIONAL SPORT OF AFGHANISTAN



## PEOPLE

nature of sports. They play to win, against all odds, and not for the mere love of game. It is hard for them to think the possibility of defeat. An Afghan student looks upon a friendly match as a real field of battle. He actually cries like a baby when he loses a game, for his sense of honour bitterly curses him for his defeat.

The Afghans have some very interesting national games, chief of them are Attan, Khosai and Buz Kashi. The last-named is a very dangerous sport. A goat is beheaded and the dead body thrown into a ditch. Hundreds of competitors, all riding swift-footed horses, take part in it. Every one tries to get the goat and take it to the goal. In this hard struggle many receive serious injuries, and some even lose their lives, being thrown off their horses and trampled upon by other riders. Khosai is a sort of wrestling. The competitors are required to use one leg and one hand only. Attan is a national dance.

While a considerable portion of the population has adopted all sorts of up-to-date conveniences, they have kept their home least affected by foreign influence. One will see all the old traditions and native customs conserved intact. The distinctive personal courtesy, the plain furnishings and decorations, the quiet and unostentatious arrangements, the almost sacred atmosphere, are all preserved in the home. They still conserve the same simplicity of tastes and modesty of ways, which have characterised them since time immemorial. These qualities are expressive of the thrifty nature and character of the nation.

A well-known English writer sums up the character of the Afghans in the following lines :

"I know no people in Asia, who have few vices, are less voluptuous or debauched . . . They are fond of liberty, faithful to their friends, keen to their dependents, hospitable, brave, frugal, laborious and prudent ; and they are less disposed than the nations in their neighbourhood to falsehood, intrigue or deceit.

"But an English traveller from India, would view them with a more favourable eye. He would be pleased with the cold climate, elevated by the wild and novel scenery, and delighted by meeting many of the productions of his own land. He would admire the strong and active forms, their fair complexions and European features, their industry and enterprise, their hospitality, sobriety, and contempt of pleasure which appear in all their habits ; and above all, the independence and energy

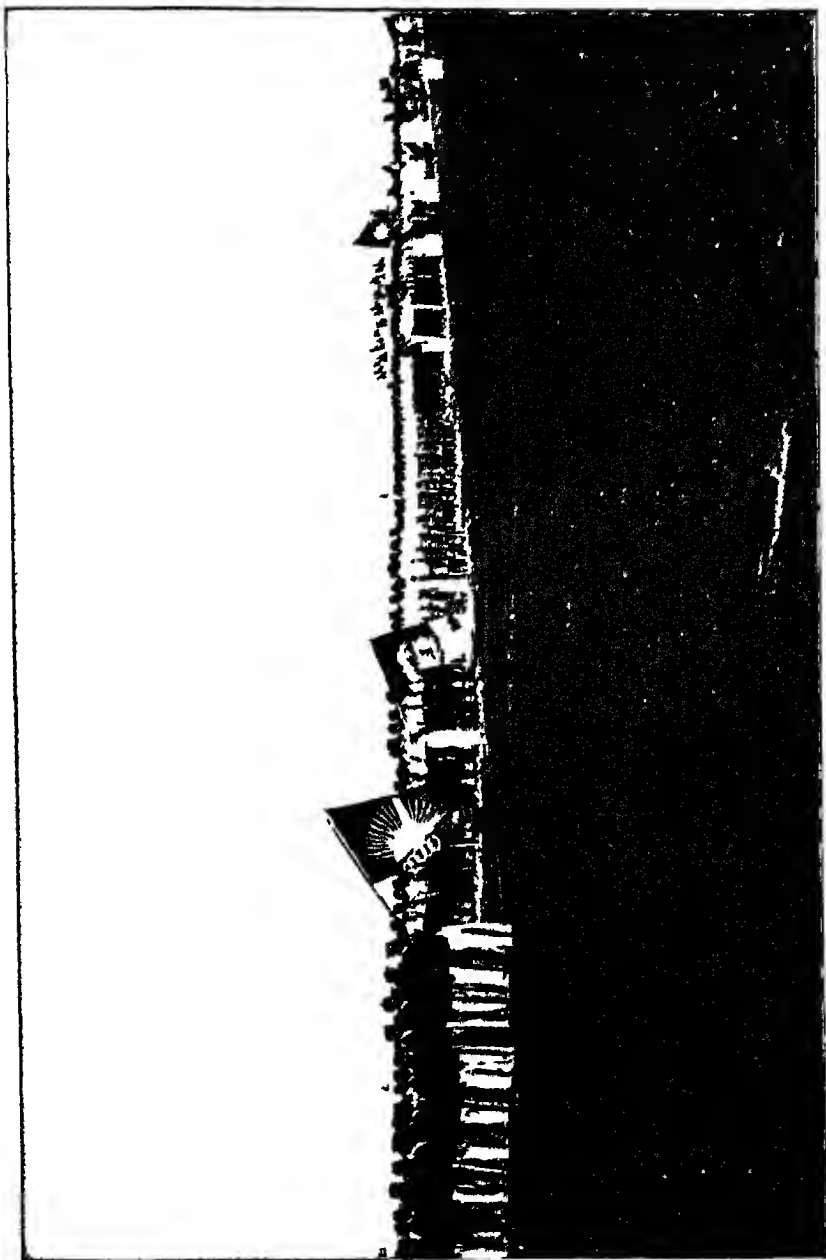
## AFGHANISTAN

of their character. . . He would be inclined to regard them with interest and kindness, and could scarcely deny them a portion of his esteem.

"Nothing could exceed the civility of the country-people. We were often invited into the gardens, and we were welcomed in every village by almost every man that saw us. They frequently entreated the gentlemen of the embassy to allow them the honour of being their hosts and sometimes would lay hold of their bridles, and not permit them to pass till they had promised to breakfast with them on some future day and even confirmed this promise by putting their hands between theirs.

"One of the most remarkable characteristics of the Afghans is their hospitality. The practice of this virtue is so much a point of honour, that their reproach to an inhospitable man is that he has no Pushtoonwalee (nothing of the customs of the Afghans). All persons, indiscriminately, are entitled to profit by this practice; and a man, who travelled over the whole country without money, would never be in want of meal, unless, perhaps, in the towns. It is the greatest affront to an Afghan to carry off his guest; but his indignation is never directed against the guest who quits him, but the person who invites him away. . . The honour of the party, thus solicited, will incur a stain if he does not grant the favour asked of him, and so far is this practice carried, that a man overmatched by his enemies, will sometimes go to the house of another man, and entreat him to take up his quarrel; which the other is obliged to do. A man's bitterest enemy is safe while he is under his roof, and a stranger who has come into an Afghan's house or tent is under the protection of the master as long as he stays in the village. From this principle arises the obligation of protecting and defending fugitives, whatever may be their crime."

The Afghans are remarkably hardy and active. From the nature of their country they are exposed to the necessity of enduring cold and heat, and accustomed to the exertions of climbing mountains, making long journeys on foot or horseback, and swimming broad and rapid torrents. They are tall and athletic, bony and muscular, with handsome features. They have high noses, and beautiful complexions. Their hair and beard are generally black, sometimes even brown. Their countenance has an air of manliness and deliberation, united to an air of simplicity, not allied to weakness. Their manners are frank and open. Though manly and



INDEPENDENCE DAY (MAY 27, 1938) ALIGARH SPORTSMEN'S MARCH PAST BEFORE  
THE ROYAL PAVILION





## LANGUAGES

independent, they are entirely free from the affectation of military pride and ferocity.

## PASTORAL LIFE

The manner of life of the Afghans is, by no means, uniform throughout. A very small portion of the population is still leading a sort of nomadic life. These Kochis, as they are called, chiefly live in tents. Life is dependent on the rearing of herds of camels, horses, cattle, sheep and goats. In order that the animals may obtain sufficient nourishment, the different tribes wander over definite areas, recognised as their special preserves; but all seek higher districts in the middle of summer in order to avoid the heat and pests of the plains, and return to lower levels for the winter. Their dwelling place is a tent, Ghijdi, as they call it. It is made of extending lattice work, and covered with black felt manufactured from wool. Some of them now live in up-to-date white tents. These tents can be easily taken down, folded up, and carried on the backs of the camels and cows. Young children, lambs and hens are tied firmly on the top of the luggage. They are furnished with carpets, rugs, and domestic utensils. The flock also furnish the staple articles of diet; flesh, butter and milk, curd and Quroot (dried curd).

This pastoral life, though a difficult one, has many advantages. It is careless and secure, uniting the advantages of various climates, and affording a relief from the monotonous city life in frequent change of scene, and never failing resource of field sports.

The number of these tent-dwellers has greatly diminished, and is still fastly dwindling. The construction of dams and creation of new acreage has been, undoubtedly, a strong inducement to these unsettled nomadic population to adopt a sedentary mode of life.

## LANGUAGES

Pashto is the language of the greater part of Afghanistan. Besides Modern Afghanistan, it is spoken in the districts of Peshawar, Hazarah, Bannu, Kohat, Dehra Ismail Khan, Dehra Ghazi Khan, Attock, and the region between these and the Durand Line.

## AFGHANISTAN

Two main dialects are, however, recognised, that of the north-east, and that of the south-west, Yusufzai and Kandahari, as they call them. They mainly differ in the pronunciation of two letters. The Yusufzais pronounce the letter **س** kh (German ch.) and the letter **ج** g(hard), while the Kandaharis pronounce them sh and j (French).

There is a fairly copious literature in this language, some original, others being translation from foreign books. The earliest books are supposed to be the Khairulbayan and Khorpan, both composed by Bayazid Ansari surnamed Pir-i-Roshan. He died in 1585 A. D. Akhundi Darveza, another writer of the same period and a great opponent of Pir-i-Roshan, is the author of more than fifty books. His most important work is the Makhzan-i-Islam, in which he attacked the heresies of his opponent. His other famous work is called Makhzan-i-Afghani, a history of the Afghans from the most remote times.

The earliest poet of the Afghans, of whom we have any work, is Mirza Ansari, a descendant of Pir-i-Roshan. But the greatest and most famous poet of the Afghans is Khushhal Khan-i-Khatak (1613—1691), the warrior Prince, who took up arms against Aurangzeb, the Emperor of India (1658—1707). His grandson, Afzal Khan was also a famous writer. His chief work is Tarikh-i-Murassa. Other famous poets are Ahdur-Rahman, Abdul Hamid and Emperor Ahmad Shah Abdali (1747—1773).

The present Government encourages the diffusion of Pashto language among all the classes by every means possible. In every town classes have been started to teach this language. It has been declared that Pashto will be the official language after three years. In primary classes Pashto is now the medium of instruction.

Next to Pashto, Persian is the most important language of the country. It is mostly spoken in towns.

Besides these two languages, there are many dialects spoken in various parts of the country. Chief of them are:—

Parachi, Ormari, Baluchi, Nuristani, Pashai, Tirahi, Panjabi, Uzbuki, Galachah dialects, such as Wakhi, Shighni, Sarkoli, Ishkashimi, Minjani, Yaghnobi, Wanji, Yazgholami and Sar Gholami.

Of foreign languages taught in schools and colleges the most important are

## RELIGION

Arabic, English, German, French and Turkish. Russian and Urdu, though no longer taught in schools, are understood by a fairly large number of people, mostly traders.

## RELIGION

Islam (Hanfi School) is the religion of the greater part of the country. Besides the Hanafi Sect a considerable number of people are Shias and Ismailis. A few thousand Hindus, Sikhs and Jews are also scattered over the country and live chiefly in towns.

There is no communal question in Afghanistan. According to the Constitutional Law of the country every one can enjoy perfect freedom of faith, and perform the ceremonies of his religion. All the people of the country, without regard to race, religion or tribe, are considered brethren and equal in sight of law.

Afghanistan seems to be the original home of two great religions of the world—Hinduism and Zoroastrianism. It was here that the earliest Vedic hymns were composed and Zoroaster preached his religion. It was also one of the chief centres of Buddhism. But it was Islam that ultimately triumphed over all, and since then, has a firm hold over the country. The Afghans, after embracing Islam, spread it in India as far as the Bay of Bengal and the Deccan.



PART THE SECOND  
GOVERNMENT



## PART II

### CONSTITUTION

THE Afghan Government till the reign of the late King, Mohammed Nadir Shahi-Shahid (1929—1933) continued to be autocratic. The King was the fountain of all power, and all orders relating to the administration of the State emanated from him. The ministers were practically the lieutenants of the King, and wielded in his name the full authority of the Government.

But under the Great King Mohammed Nadir Shah, Government gave way to constitutionalism. Realising that no people in these days can make any progress without participating in the affairs of their own Government, he, with the help of his talented brothers, drew up a written constitution in 1931, which provided a Cabinet, a Senate (Majlis-i-Ayan), and a House of Representatives (Majlis-i-Shurai-Milli). The Senate is composed of sixty members, who hold their seats by right of past services or nomination by the King. Most of them are men who have rendered great and meritorious services to the country. The House of Representatives consists of 120 members, elected by ballot from among the voters in every constituency. Suffrage is not restricted by any property qualification, and is extended to all people over 20 years of age, possessing sound moral character. The representatives of the people enjoy perfect freedom in the expression of their opinion, and do not seem ever to have been hampered in their discussions.

But large powers are reserved for the King; this being an absolute necessity in a country where democratic institutions are yet in their infancy. Only the King can declare war or negotiate peace with the enemy or enter into treaties. No law passed by the Majlis can become operative until his sanction has been obtained. He can, in times of emergency, issue an urgent ordinance which temporarily overrides any or all existing laws.

In the Constitutional Law of the country, the independence of the State is put down as of primary importance, and every king, at the time of his coronation has to take a solemn oath to respect it and to preserve it at all costs. Immunity of the individual from unnecessary interference by State officials has been given emphasis.



## AFGHANISTAN

The Royal Coronation Oath runs thus :—

“ I swear by God and the Holy Quran that in all my acts and deeds, I shall defend the true religion of Islam and the Independence of the Fatherland. I will respect the rights of my nation and will work for the progress and prosperity of the country, and will rule according to the Mohammedan Law and the Fundamental Law of Afghanistan.”

According to this constitution the throne of the country is hereditary in the house of the late King Mohammed Nadir Shah.

### **The Cabinet—**

Whilst the King is the supreme head of the Government, the practical work of administration is conducted by the Prime Minister (Sadar-i-Azam) and his Cabinet. Each department of State is in charge of a separate minister. There are at present 11 ministers, *viz.*, War, State, Foreign, Interior, Justice, Finance, Education, Commerce, Public Works, Health and Post & Telegraphs.

The present Cabinet is as follows :—

**(1) Prime Minister—**

H. R. H. ‘ A. A. ’ Sardar Mohammed Hashim Khan.

**(2) Minister of War—**

H. R. H. ‘ A. A. ’ Sardar Shah Mahmud Khan-i-Ghazi.

**(3) Minister of State—**

H. E. Sardar Sher Ahmad Khan.

**(4) Minister of Foreign Affairs—**

H. E. Faiz Mohammed Khan.

**(5) Minister of Interior—**

H. E. ‘ A. A. ’ Mohammed Gul Khan.

**(6) Minister of Justice—**

H. E. Fazal Ahmad Khan.



H. R. H. 'A.A.' SARDAR MOHAMMED HASHIM KHAN,  
SADAR-I-AZAM (PRIME MINISTER)



## REFORMS

- (7) **Minister of Finance (Acting)—**  
H. E. Mirza Mohammed Khan
- (8) **Minister of Education—**  
H. H. Sardar Mohammed Naim Khan.
- (9) **Minister of Commerce—**  
H. E. Mirza Mohammed Khan.
- (10) **Minister of Public Works—**  
H. E. Abdur Rahim Khan.
- (11) **Minister of Health—**  
H. E. Ghulam Yahyah Khan.
- (12) **Minister of Post & Telegraphs—**  
H. E. Rahimullah Khan.
- (13) **President of the Senate—**  
H. E. Ata Mohammed Khan.
- (14) **President of the House of Representatives—**  
H. E. Abdul Ahad Khan.
- (15) **Director-General (Mudir-i-Mustaqil) of Mines—**  
H. Honour Mohammed Karim Khan.
- (16) **Director-General (Mudir-i-Mustaqil) of Agriculture—**  
H. Honour S. Mohammad Yusif Khan.

Ministers who have no seats in the Cabinet :—

**Minister of Court—**

H. R. H. Sardar Ahmad Shah Khan.

**Chief Secretary to His Majesty the King—**

H. E. Mohammed Naw-Roz Khan.

## REFORMS

### **The Army—**

During the reign of H. M. Amir Habibullah Khan (1901—1919) and the early days of the ex-King Amanullah Khan, when the late King Mohammed Nadir Shah was the Sipah Salar (the Marshal of the Afghan Forces) the Arm

## AFGHANISTAN

made rapid progress. A military school was established to impart education on modern lines. The army, though small, was efficient and properly equipped.

In 1924 Marshal Mohammed Nadir Khan was appointed Afghan Minister at Paris, and the army, left in the hands of incompetent and corrupt officers, suffered heavily. As a result of this negligence, the army, though equipped with aeroplanes, armoured cars and heavy Italian guns, could not cope successfully with a handful of robbers.

When King Mohammed Nadir Shah came to the throne (1929), he was fully aware of the widespread corruption among the officers, and the various grievances of the soldiers. He, therefore, appointed his energetic brother, Sardar Shah Mahmud Khan, the Sipah Salar of the Afghan Forces. The Sardar is an experienced general and a very strict disciplinarian. In the field he infuses his own intrepid spirit into the troops, whom he conducts with the talents of a consummate general. He is a man of strong moral character, just and kind-hearted. Yet when force is necessary, no one can wield it better, for with the skill of a general he unites the robustness of constitution, which enables him to bear all the hardships of a campaign as well as the ordinary soldier.

Under his guidance the army is being reorganised; or one should say, is newly created. Military schools for the instruction of officers have been started in all the important towns of the country. In Kabul itself there is a military academy for the training of cadets. There is a military school for the training of sons of the tribal chiefs, called Maktab-i-Ihzaria. Recently a military college (Course-i-Aali) was started to impart higher military training to officers.

In addition to the Central Military Hospital, every cantonment is provided with a dispensary and a qualified doctor. The old and ruined cantonments are repaired, and new ones on the latest models are being built all over the country. Every cantonment is supplied with spacious playgrounds, and great impetus is given to sports. A large club has been opened for the soldiers, who are now decently dressed and better equipped. They undergo regular training. Military laws and regulations are strictly carried out.

By reason of its political situation and the warlike spirit of its inhabitants, Afghanistan has to maintain, in relation to its area and number, a larger standing army



H. K. II. 'A. A.' SARDAR SHAH MAHMUD KHAN GHAZI,  
MINISTER OF WAR

## AFGHANISTAN

these departments, besides the Afghan graduates educated abroad or at home, a large number of foreign specialists from countries, having diplomatic relations with Afghanistan, are employed. The number of such foreign employees has increased this year by more than 25%.

The efforts of the Ministry of Education, in opening new primary schools, are worth noting. The number of these schools this year is increased by 50%, while the number of the students on roll is enhanced by more than 60%. Even in some of the small villages, having a population of barely a thousand souls, primary schools have been started.

Similarly sweeping changes have been made in the curriculum, specially in the courses of history and geography. Great efforts are being made to revive the national language, *i.e.*, Pashto, which had been neglected for a long time. In all the classes from the first primary right up to the highest class Pashto is now taught, and steps are being taken to introduce this language as the medium of instruction.

To achieve this object, *i.e.*, revival of the national language, the Pashto Tolana (Pashto Assembly) was established at the capital by the amalgamation of the Literary Society and the Society of Pashto.

In addition to these, this year has witnessed the establishment of a Technical Institution, and steps are being taken to start a Faculty of Science (to teach biology, mineralogy, physics, chemistry and mathematics) and a Faculty of Training for teachers.

In all these institutions instruction is free, even books and stationery are provided by the Government. Besides getting the benefit of free tuition, free books and other materials, nearly 10% of the students are paid handsome stipends. Faculty students, in addition to their monthly stipends, get free meals and clothing. Promising students are sent abroad on State expense. Great care is taken of the health of the students. Every school and college is provided with playgrounds. The Ministry has a well-equipped dispensary and qualified doctors. The students are properly examined, no charge is made for consultation or treatment.

The State regulates public instruction, and maintains, either entirely or in conjunction with the commune, primary school of every grade. Schools in Afghanistan may be classified under the following heads:—

(1) Elementary Schools, providing elementary education, are of two grades,

## REFORMS

(a) those entirely regulated by the Government, (b) under Government supervision. In these local elementary schools instruction is imparted in Reading, Writing, Arithmetic and Theology for 4 years.

- (2) Secondary Instruction
  - {(a) Classical
  - {(b) Technical.
- (3) Higher Education
  - {(a) Classical
  - {(b) Faculties:—
    - (1) Medical Faculty.
    - (2) Science Faculty.
    - (3) Faculty of Training.

Besides these institutions there are special classes for teachers and languages.

Vast impetus is also given to original research and production by the establishment of a special department, the Bureau of Education, under qualified professors of different nationalities, helped by the Afghan graduates themselves. Authorship is encouraged by munificent allowances. Due to this encouragement many journals have come into being in all the important cities. In Kabul alone there are about half a dozen, of which the *Urdu-i-Afghan* (a military monthly magazine), *Aina-i-Irfan* (the Mirror of Education), *the Kabul* and *Iqtisad* (Economical Journal), being most important. Of these the *Aina-i-Irfan* and *the Kabul* deserve our special notice. The former is issued monthly by the Ministry of Education. Besides many historical subjects, it deals with the problems of education and proper bringing up of students.

*The Kabul* is also a monthly journal and is issued by the Anjuman-i-Adabi, the Literary Society, founded by the late King in the second year of his reign. The Society is formed by a group of enthusiastic young Afghans, specially interested in Afghan history and literature. It has a nice small building in the heart of the capital, where its members meet and work. Besides the monthly journal the society issues a *Salnama*—an Annual, containing many useful articles on different subjects, specially dealing with the important events of the previous year.

These literary institutions are manifestations of the right direction given to



## AFGHANISTAN

modern awakening of Afghanistan by the late and never sufficiently lamented King, the Great Nadir Shah.

### **Financial Reforms—**

The late King with the help of his gifted brother, Sardar Mohammed Hashim Khan, the Prime Minister, increased the national income by more careful collection of taxes. At the same time he reduced the public expenditures by rigid economy. The crowning achievement of his financial readjustment was the establishment of the Afghan National Bank, which has been, since then, one of the soundest financial institutions of the country. Recent years have witnessed many improvements, much has been done to alleviate the troubles of the cultivators. The financial reforms have done much to prevent waste and misappropriation of public money, and to provide surpluses, available for works of public utility, which were, till the accession of the late king, conspicuous by their absence.

### **Public Works—**

The Prime Minister has also proved himself a zealous benefactor of public works. With a very moderate expenditure of Afghan funds, he enormously improved the means of travel and trade within the country, and thereby promoted the economic welfare of the inhabitants. He has created a special ministry of P. W. (Fawaid-i-Amah) to look after works of public utility, and to construct new roads, bridges and dams. Likewise he has improved the old cities, and adorned them with precious works of art. The old irrigation works, which had been neglected or which had fallen in ruins, are restored, and new ones built.

### **Prison Reforms—**

Previous to King Nadir Shah prisons were dirty, incredibly dirty. They were badly ventilated, and were over-crowded. The smell in the prisons was abominable. A great number of prisoners died of jail fever. Jailors, who were to look after them, made as much money as they could from the unfortunate persons. They were loaded with heavy irons so that they might be bribed to take them off. They were all huddled together in hopeless confusion.

But now all the prisons are well-ventilated. They have several cells to accommodate different classes of criminals. Jailors are ordered to give as many facilities and comforts to a prisoner as he deserves. The prisoners are not required to pay any fee to the jailors; bribery is practically stopped. Each prisoner is



H. T. ALI, MUHAMMAD KHAN,  
MINISTER OF EDUCATION



H. B. AKBAR, SHER AHMAD KHAN,  
MINISTER OF STATE



## REFORMS

kept in a separate room. He is taught cleanliness and discipline. He is given regular work to do—work according to the nature of person and crime. Attempts are made to mould his character. Due to this many wicked men are seen to have improved. Invariably when they come out they are better men.

### **Administration —**

The Administration is conducted on definite lines analogous to modern European systems. All Government posts are equally open to the natives of the country, irrespective of race, religion or sect.

The provincial administration is conducted by governors (Naibul Hukama and Chief Commissioners but their powers and jurisdiction are definitely laid down.

Justice is administered by three sorts of courts, called Ibtidaiah, Murafiat and Tamiz, and the basic law of the country is Shariat, the Mohammedan Law.

Minor cases are disposed off by the Kotwal, the Chief Police Officer of the city.

## AFGHANISTAN

### ALMUTAWAKAL ALLALLAH KING MOHAMMED ZAHIR SHAH

H. M. King Mohammed Zahir Shah, the only surviving son of the late King Mohammed Nadir Shah, peacefully succeeded him to the throne on November 8, 1933, with the title of Almutawakal Allallah.—He who puts his trust in the Lord.

His Majesty was born in Kabul on Monday, October 15, 1914, and therefore he was but 19 years of age when the oath of allegiance was sworn to him. His generous and exceedingly popular manners had already won for him the hearts of his subjects, and his accession was hailed by all parties of the country.

At a very tender age the King displayed a spirit which had endeared him to his father. Being endowed with considerable mental powers and gifted with energy, prudence and bravery, he was fully equipped to the task he was now asked to shoulder.

H. M. is the first Afghan King who has been educated in a European country, and also the first Afghan sovereign to take the Oath of Coronation according to the Constitutional Law of the country. On completion of his primary education at home, he, in 1924, accompanied his illustrious father to Paris. He first studied at Lycée Janson de Sailly, and then at Lycée Michelet and Collège de Montpellier, and in all these institutions he greatly distinguished himself. During the recent Afghan Revolution, when his father and uncles left for their Fatherland, the Prince was left behind to continue his studies.

In 1930 the Prince was recalled to Kabul, where he joined the Officers' Infantry Course. Here too, he gave sufficient proof of his great mental powers and genius. He was then asked to work in different departments of public affairs, where he soon won the esteem and affection of all who came in touch with him. During the absence of H. R. H. Sardar Shah Mahmud Khan, he officiated as the Minister of War, and then he was asked to officiate the Ministry of Education, which post he successfully held till the tragic death of his father.

On the very day of his accession the King declared that he would scrupulously follow in the footsteps of his late father, and prosecute his programme (Khat-i-Mashi). Since then he takes a keen interest in every public affair, and has never





## THE KING

relinquished his efforts to improve the condition of his subjects, to promote agriculture and develop the natural resources of the country. His administration, like that of the late King, is enlightened, just and liberal. He has fully inherited the administrative and military genius of his father.

By rigid economy of the public expenditures and by careful collection of the revenues he has greatly increased the exports and imports, and it will be no exaggeration to say that unemployment question is here conspicuous by its absence. When all over the world the question of reduction of staffs and salaries is being discussed, in Afghanistan alone, the Government, in the beginning of 1936, was in a position to enhance the salaries of all the employees by 25%. His Majesty's principle of Government consists in securing the goodwill of his people, and to promote their happiness by every means possible. Previously all goods conveyed from one city to another were also taxed, and there were different sorts of taxes to be paid for crossing certain bridges, which greatly hampered internal trade. But in 1935 the King was pleased to abolish all such taxes, thus alleviating greatly the troubles of his people.

The king also devotes much of his attention to the uplift and unification of his subjects, and is desirous of welding them into a strong nation. Various steps are being taken to achieve this object, foremost of these being the diffusion of Pashto language among all the classes of the people. In every city and town evening classes to teach Pashto have been started.

In spite of the various other duties which he has to perform, he himself attends to the complaints of his humblest subjects, and dispenses justice and gives free audience to people, which has won for him the devotion of all classes.

He is not only a patron of philosophers, but a studious scholar himself, commanding considerable fluency in various languages, Persian, Pashto and French being most important of them.

His handsome person, spontaneous eloquence, and frank deportment, are a great assistance to him in the prosecution of his duties. His liberality towards scholars is unbounded. All branches of learning and science flourish under the enlightened sovereign. The numerous schools and colleges founded by his illustrious father are all well-endowed, and properly maintained. He himself has established many schools, where children of all classes receive gratuitous education.



## AFGHANISTAN

His Majesty considers that the true happiness of his subjects consists in education and culture. In every speech he emphasises the importance of education to his people. His court is also covered with men of science and letters.

In short, whatever makes a kingdom great and prosperous, whatever tends to refinement and civilisation, is found in Afghanistan of to-day. Fine libraries now feed the minds of the scholars, and books are being gathered together at Kabul for the benefit of students. Literature, arts and crafts of every kind are cultivated, encouraged and patronised ; the cities are embellished with fine public and private structures.



H. R. H. PRINCE MOHAMMED AKBAR KHAN



PART THE THIRD  
The Tourist's Guide to the Country



## PART III

### RULES FOR VISITORS

#### Passport Regulations—

EVERY visitor to the country, before leaving for Afghanistan, must satisfy himself that he possesses a valid passport issued by his own Government, and bearing the Afghan visa, which can be obtained by applying to the nearest Afghan Legation, Consulate or Visa Office. The fee charged for such endorsement is exactly the same as levied by the Government of his own country for endorsing a similar Afghan Passport.

#### *Afghan Diplomatic and Consular Representatives in Foreign Countries :—*

- (1) Ankara (Turkey)—Ambassador.
- (2) Teheran (Iran)—Ambassador.
- (3) Moscow (Russia)—Ambassador.
- (4) Paris (For France, Berne, Bruxelles)—Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary.
- (5) London—Minister Plenipotentiary.
- (6) Rome—Minister Plenipotentiary.
- (7) Tokyo—Minister Plenipotentiary.
- (8) Jedda (Hedjaz)—Minister Plenipotentiary.
- (9) Delhi—Consul-General.
- (10) Meshad—Consul-General.
- (11) Bombay—Consul.
- (12) Karachi—Consul.

#### *Visa Officials :—*

- (1) Peshawar.
- (2) Quetta.

Afghanistan joined the League of Nations on September 27, 1934, and has a permanent representative at Geneva.

## AFGHANISTAN

Visitors are required to show their passports at all the frontier posts of the country, both on their arrival and departure. On entering a city they should at once proceed to the Kotwali (the Police Station) to get the Warqa-i-Iqamat (Residential permits). If putting up in a Government hotel, the Director of the hotel will arrange for it.

### Customs Regulations—

The luggage of travellers, whether they leave or enter Afghanistan, such as clothing, wearing-apparel, foodstuffs and utensils, according to the social status of the travellers, are exempted from Customs dues.

The import of books, newspapers, printed or written articles, nude and immoral pictures, photographs and postcards, that may be a cause of unrest and disturbance, or may be against the principles of Islam, or against the approved morals of the country, is strictly prohibited. Similarly all sorts of poisons, opium, morphine, cocaine, *charas*, liquors, and all other intoxicants, foreign matches, toys and various other things, considered to be the articles of luxury, are forbidden to import. For the import of arms and ammunition and dyes also special permission is to be obtained.

The export of (1) horses, sheep, camels, mules, cows and grey hounds; (2) gold or silver, coined or bullion; (3) all kinds of antiques, such as idols, statues, tapestries, paintings and pictures, manuscripts, swords, bows, matchlocks, etc.; and (4) the agricultural products—wheat, flour, barley, rice, is forbidden.

It is advisable that before crossing the frontier the visitor should consult one of the Afghan Trade Agents (at Peshawar, Quetta or Parachinar) and satisfy himself that he does not carry any article into the country the import of which is prohibited. In case he wants to take dutiable articles with him into the country, he should obtain an Ilm-o-Khabar (Declaration Form) from the Trade Office. Customs are to be paid for those articles, either at the frontier posts, or at any other Customs House of the country to which the visitor intends to proceed. Failure to obtain a Declaration Form for a dutiable article makes it liable to confiscation.

An English translation of the Afghan Customs Act, 1313 A. H., corresponding to 1934 A. D., can be obtained by applying to the Ministry of Trade, Kabul.



H. F. MOHAMMED NAWROO KHAN, CHIEF SECRETARY  
TO H. M. THE KING.



H. R. H. SAKKAR AHMAD SHAH KHAN,  
MINISTER OF THE ROYAL COURT





## RULES FOR VISITORS

### When to Travel--

Every one who intends visiting Afghanistan should first seek information as to the best time of the year to spend in the country, and what arrangements to make. It is hard to say which season to choose; if a stay of five or six months is to be made, June is the best month for the journey. But if he wants to stay for a month or two, he should better visit the country during autumn, which is the fruit season. Generally speaking, spring, summer, and autumn are the times to visit Afghanistan, and it is hard to say which is the best. Spring commences towards the end of March, officially on the 1st of Hamal (21st March), but April and even the first few days of May can be wet and cold. May and early June are delightful, but towards the end of June the valleys get warm and relaxing, and it is well, then, to move higher into the hills. Spring gives you the new blossoms, and the low snow, which enhance the landscape so much, but autumn gives the wonderful glory of changing leaf, with background of newly fallen snow on the neighbouring hills.

Since the country is, comparatively speaking, small, one may follow the climate of one's choice, simply by going higher as the summer advances, and then gradually descending as do the shepherds and their flocks, following the melting snow upwards, until in autumn the new snow drives them down again. It is, therefore, fascinating thus to follow spring from the valleys into the hills, to be always level with the first new blossoms, until at last you come up to the passes, the winter snow clearing even before you, and a rich carpet of mountain flowers ever about your feet—wild flowers that have gone from the places where you camped only a fortnight earlier.

### Clothing—

If he intends to visit the country during summer, clothing of medium thickness will do. If it is winter, he must have sufficient woollen clothes with him. It is advisable to have a fine pair of tinted glasses to protect the eyes from the dazzling light of snow, a good over-coat, a water-proof sheet for bedding and a pair of good gloves and goshes.

### Rates and Prices—

It is not easy to dogmatize on the subject of prices, which are subject to market fluctuations, and what is now written, may be out of date in a few months.

## AFGHANISTAN

But simply to give an idea to the visitor, it may be said, that Afghanistan is less expensive than India. The fruit of the country is a boon to the tourist. All kinds of best fruits are sold at extremely cheap rates. For example, grapes of the best quality can be had at one pence a pound even in the capital.

### Fares—

There is a regular Government Postal Service throughout the country. A limited number of passengers can travel by these postal lorries. Besides, private lorries and cars are always available. A five-seater car, from Peshawar to Kabul, a distance of 200 miles, generally charges Rs. 100 to 120 (Indian coin, or 400 to 500 Afghanis). Single seat (when available) Rs. 20 to 25 Indian coin. Single seat by lorry is charged Rs. 6 (Indian) or even less. Luggage at the rate of Rs. 2-12-0 per maund (80 lbs). About two maunds of light kit is allowed free with each car, and 20 seers (40 lbs) with every seat by lorry. Extra luggage despatched by lorry is charged at the above rate.

*Kabul to Kandahar (distance 315 miles).*—A whole car, Rs. 150 (Indian) or 600 Afghanis. Lorry seat, 20 to 30 Afghanis.

*Kabul to Mazar-i-Sharif.*—A whole car, 800 Afghanis. Lorry seat, 40 to 50 Afghanis.

*Kandahar to Herat.*—A whole car is charged at 800 to 900 Afghanis or 40 to 50 Afghanis per seat in lorry.

*Approximate charges for a whole car.*—One way journey at the rate of 2 Afghanis per mile. Return journey at the rate of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Afghani per mile.

These rates are subject to alteration from time to time as much depends upon the traffic offerings.

Private cars are also allowed to enter the country on payment of a slight tax.

### Petrol—

Petrol can be had in all the towns and at various other places, such as Torkham, Jalalabad, Fatehabad, Ghazni, Mukar, Kalat-i-Ghilzai, Spin Bolak, (Kala-i-Jadid), Farah, Girish, Dilaram, Charikar, Doabi-Mekh-i-Zarin, Bamian, Khanabad, Andkhui, Maimanah and Gardez.



GOVERNOR'S OFFICE, KANDAHAR



## RULES FOR VISITORS

It is, generally, cheaper here than in India.

### **Speed Limit—**

There is no speed limit outside the cities, but it is advisable to drive slowly and cautiously, specially on the more dangerous portions where the road skirts hills.

### **Hotels—**

Besides a large number of private hotels, there are nice Government hotels in all the important towns and stages. The chief hotels are located at the following places.

Kabul, Jalalabad, Nimla, Mazar-i-Sharif, Aibak, Doabi-Mekh-i-Zarin, Bamian, Ghazni, Mukar, Kandahar, Paghman (only for summers), Kalat-i-Ghilzai, Dilaram, Andkhui, Maimanah, Tashqurghan. These hotels are comfortably situated, and furnished throughout. Special diet requirements receive careful attention. It is better to send a telephone order from one of the neighbouring stages to the hotel where you want to put up and have your meals.

### **Communication—**

Communication in Afghanistan is no longer confined by rough tracts and footpaths. There is a network of motor roads radiating from the capital to different parts of the country. Even a small town is no longer inaccessible to cars. Most of these roads have been constructed quite recently, during the reigns of the late King and his illustrious son H. M. King Mohammed Zahir Shah, the present ruler of the country. The road from Kabul to Mazar-i-Sharif, across the Hindu Koh, is one of those permanent improvements with which the late King endowed Afghanistan. Previously this distance of hardly 400 miles was covered in 25 days, and during winters the province of Mazar was totally cut off from the centre, but now it has become possible to use the route throughout the year, the whole distance is traversed in less than two days. Thus now one can enjoy all the beauties of its mountains and valleys without undergoing the discomfort of riding prehistoric animals, such as camels or ponies, or travelling long distances on foot.

## AFGHANISTAN

### A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE IMPORTANT ROUTES

		<i>Via</i> Old Road	<i>Via</i> New Road
<b>Peshawar Cantt. to Kabul</b> (distances in English miles)	...	208	200
<b>(1) Peshhwar Cantt. to Afghan Border (Torkham)</b>	...	35	
Torkham to Kabul	... ..	173	165

This route is more commonly used. Under normal conditions and provided no extra stoppages are made *en route*, the journey from Peshawar to Kabul—a distance of 200 miles—can be accomplished in a day by car, and a day and a half by lorry. The first few stages (as far as Fatehabad) would be hot after the middle of April.

#### **Torkham—**

Afghan Military Post, facing British Landikhana. Here passports are examined. Telegraph, Telephone and Petrol Pump.

#### **(2) Torkham to Dekka (7 Miles).**

Road is level, and on either side is encompassed by bare rocky hills.

Dekka, a small village, and military camping ground, lies on the right bank of the Kabul river. Here the visitors have to present their passports to the Sarhadar (the Border Officer). Here is a Customs Office, where the visitors are required to show their goods. Food and other provisions can be had.

#### **(3) Dekka to Jalababad (42 Miles).**

Road lies nearly parallel to the Kabul river through a tract of hilly country between two ranges of mountains, which running in their length, east and west, enclose between them a breadth of about 20 miles from north to south. This intermediate country is by no sense a valley, as it is divided into a series of small plains by crossing ranges of small hills. These plains are generally barren and stony. It is only at the foot of the hills or along the banks of the river that fertile patches are to be seen. Water can be had at various places. Villages are few and far between.



H. I. IAZL AHMAD KHAN,  
MINISTER OF JUSTICE



H. I. IAZL AHMAD KHAN,  
MINISTER OF INTERIOR





## IMPORTANT ROUTES

**Jalalabad** (Height 1,950 feet. population 22,000).

It stands nearly, in the centre of a plain which extends from west to east, about 20 miles and has a breadth, at its widest part, of 10 to 12 miles. The cultivated portion is often intersected by water-cuts. The northern portion on the bank of the river Kabul, is extremely swampy. The river is here broad, rapid and clear, having a breadth during October, of more than a hundred yards. Its banks are low and wide apart. Jalalabad, the chief town of the Eastern Province, is 116 miles from Kabul. This lovely resort makes an excellent place in winter, when the climate is most cheering. The old town of Jalalabad is in no way remarkable. It is encompassed by a high mud wall. Outside the city there are beautiful bungalows. There are gardens reaching to the bank of the river and are a joy to the visitors. There is an up-to-date hotel, Hotel de Jalalabad, noted for its comfort and moderate charges. Many places of historic interest and natural beauty, within easy reach of Jalalabad, may be visited.

Recently the foundation of a new city was laid, and the work is now proceeding rapidly.

### PLACES OF INTEREST IN THE NEIGHBOURHOOD.

**Hadda-Sharif** (6 Miles).

It is very rich in historic reminiscences of an eventful past, and has played an important part in the annals of the country. The well-known school of sculpture, named the School of Gandahara, had, undoubtedly, its centre at Hadda, where its most beautiful specimens have been discovered. Excavations are supervised by the Delegation Française L'Archaeologie.

**Laghman** (24 miles from Jalalabad).

The valley of Laghman lies to the north-west of Jalalabad. It is a very fertile valley, watered by two streams—Alishang and Alinghar. From here a road leads to Asmar. Thence commences the romantic country of Nuristan.

**Nuristan** (Distance from Jalalabad 60 miles).

To the south-west of the great gorges that come down from the Pamir—the Roof of the World, lies the most fascinating region of Afghanistan, known as Nuristan (old name Kafirstan).

## AFGHANISTAN

Up till somewhere about 1892, popular legend and belief peopled this region with the descendants of Alexander's army—men whom Alexander had left there. But in 1892, George Robertson entered the country twice, on the latter occasion making a prolonged stay, visiting several of the valleys and staying at the villages. He made a close study of their language, manners and customs. His report for the first time dispelled the idea that they had any Macedonian origin.

The valleys of Nuristan strike the traveller by their neatness, their beauty and well-cultivated fields. Near the houses are planted trees, laid out paths, and carefully conducted water, by which the ancientness of sedentary culture is felt. The crops are sown in small patches. Every foot of land is utilized. The fields are surrounded by fences. From Parun pass (15,900 feet) onwards lies the Forest Zone, known by its general name of Asmar Forests. Here most of the houses are built of wood, with stones only in the foundations. The population is of Aryan type, tall and extremely beautiful.

Beyond Pashki begins the typical forest zone. This is the realm of coniferous trees, the cedar and the pine, and from time to time the eye can meet deciduous trees also. Little beyond the paths, lies the thickest part of the forests. No human soul is met with.

From Pashki to Varna the way is especially difficult. A little below, the pine entirely disappears and is replaced by continuous oak forests.

Nuristan is indeed the most isolated part of the country. It is, therefore, so far peculiar in its culture, the composition of its inhabitants, its language and even its type of landscape. Shut up by dense forests on all sides, in the various gorges between high mountains, on inaccessible heights, everything of Nuristan is romantic and fascinating.

### **Kaja (28 Miles from Jalalabad)—**

It lies at the foot of the Spin Ghar. It is the summer residence of the Chief Commissioner of Jalalabad. A little further lies Mamakhel, noted for its healthy climate.

### **(4) Jalalabad to Fatehabad (distance 16 Miles)—**

For the first six or seven miles the traveller finds himself in a fertile plain, covered with high and lofty trees, under the shade of which is often a village or fort.

## IMPORTANT ROUTES

The road for the most part is level. By a gradual ascent the open valley of Fatehabad is reached. It is a small village with a few shops, where provisions can be had. Petrol Pump.

### (5) Fatehabad to Nimla (10 Miles)—

The road is generally level. Nimla is a beautiful royal garden, planted with cypress trees of great size and beauty. The whole locality is of great beauty and interest. Here is a hotel, with comfortable rooms and excellent food arrangements.

### (6) Nimla to Gandumak (8 Miles)—

The land rises abruptly. There is a steep ascent. The dense forest of the Spin Ghar can be seen on the left. At the foot of this range lies the country of Gandumak. Water and provisions abundant.

### (7) Gandumak to Surkhpul (Red Bridge) 8 Miles -

### (8) Surkhpul to Kolali (6 Miles)—

The road lies through a barren and inhospitable country. It is a wide waste of bare and naked low sandy hills, encompassed by high mountains, specially on the south. The road scrambles up and down steep acclivities and through narrow defiles, bounded on each side by steep rocks. At Kolali provisions can be had.

### (9) Kolali to Jigdalik (10 Miles)—

The road still lies through a barren hilly country, with several sharp turnings. At Jigdalik food is procurable.

### (10) Jigdalik to Fermanbeg (3 Miles)—

Road zigzag.

### (11) Fermanbeg to Katasang (7 Miles)—

At six and a half miles from Fermanbeg the road branches off. The new road lies to the right, and leads to Kabul *via* Lataband pass. The other goes straight to Katasang and thence to Kabul *via* Khakijabbar pass.

# AFGHANISTAN

## VIA LATABAND PASS

### (12) Junction to the height of Lataband (10 Miles)—

For the first few miles the road skirts low sandy hills, then it enters the gorge of Tizin, and runs along it, slowly ascending the pass.

From the height of Lataband to Butkhak (25 miles). The road scrambles up and down steep acclivities and through narrow defiles, bounded by high rocks. Water scarce.

At Butkhak there is a Customs Office. The old road, *via* Khakijabbar also joins the new one at this place.

## VIA KHAKIJABBAR

### (13) Katasang to Barikab (7 Miles)—

The road lies through low sandy hills, and scrambles up and down steep ascents and descents. Water procurable at several places. At Barikab there is a Government Rest House. Provisions can be had.

### (14) Barikab to Khakijabbar (19 Miles)—

For the first two miles there is a gradual descent. Then begins the Tizin Gorge (Tizin Khowar as they call it). The road runs along the dry bed of the Tizin river for about 8 miles. There is a gradual ascent.

After this there is an abrupt ascent of about 1,800 feet to the pass.

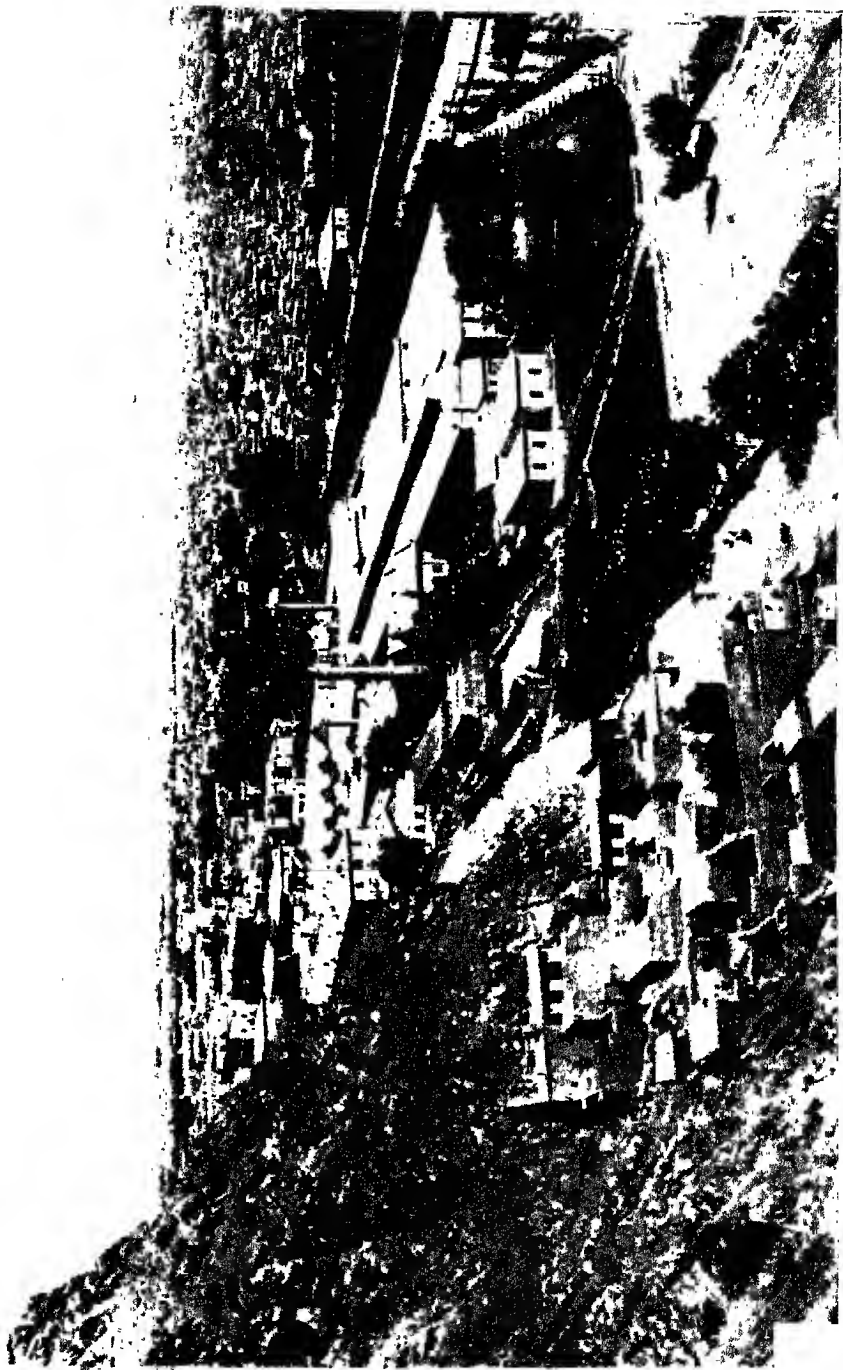
Water scarce. It is advisable to get sufficient water from the Tizin stream. The pass is some 8,200 feet above sea-level. From here there is a gradual slope up to Butkhak. In winter tractors are used to keep the pass clear of snow.

### (15) Khakijabbar to Bandighazi (9 Miles)—

After Khakijabbar the road descends steeply.

### (16) Band-i-ghazi to Butkhak (7 Miles)—

The road proceeds through a long and narrow defile between steep and lofty hills, devoid of verdure. The pass is called Khurdkabul. After crossing this gorge the road enters a spacious plain, and the village of Butkhak is reached.





## IMPORTANT ROUTES

### (17) Butkhak to Kabul (12 Miles)—

The road from here lies due west. Five miles from Kabul the river Logar is crossed. Here lies the beautiful garden of Bagrami, a pleasant resting place for those who travel slowly. At Kotali-Yak-Linga, a small pass near Kabul, there is a police post, where foreigners are required to hand over their passports, which can be had later on, from the Central Police Station (Kotwali).

From here Kabul is two miles and a half.

### Kabul (Height 6,000 feet, population 120,000)—

The city of Kabul lies in a triangular gorge formed by two ranges of high and steep mountains, the Asmai (6,790) and the Sherderwaza (7,166) which, running south-east and north-west, nearly meet a little to the west of the town, leaving between the two, a narrow entrance traversed by the Kabul river and the road from Ghazni. The city is thus encompassed by hills on two sides. These hills are covered with a long line of mud wall, having round towers at short distances. From the top of the hills a glorious view of the valley and the surrounding mountain ranges may be obtained. The snowy summits of the Hindu Koh are also visible. The present city is more than 8 miles in circumference, but the presence of these two hills has made expansion to south and west impossible, and this is the reason why the city is now extending towards the north.

On the top of a rocky eminence south-east of the city, stands the historical fort of Balahissar, now the seat of a military college. On entering the city the visitor's eye is first attracted by a column, standing in the middle of a square. It was built in 1929, to commemorate the deliverance from the cruel clutches of the Brigand Chief, Bacha-i-Saqao, and is, therefore, named the Column of Nijat or Deliverance. To the right lies the Chaman-i-Huzuri, the parade and playgrounds, where the Afghan Independence Day is also celebrated (27th May). The Nijat Bazaar stands to the left, facing the grounds. A little beyond, the eye can meet two fine buildings, one being the Ministry of Public Works, the other a café. On the other side of the road stands the Idgah. To the east of these grounds there is a small hill, called Tapa-i-Maranjan. This is the Royal Cemetery. The tombs of the late King and Sardar Sultan Mohammed Khan are located here.

About 4 furlongs to the north of these grounds lie the Military Hospital,



## AFGHANISTAN

the Ministry of War, and the Central Customs House. The visitor has to proceed first of all to the Customs House.

Beyond the Ministry of War are located the Military Club, the Olympic Villa, the Aerodrome, and the New Fort, called Qala-i-Jangi. Between the Ministry of War and the Customs House, the famous Independence Column stands, built in 1919, soon after the Third Anglo-Afghan War, to commemorate the brilliant victory of the late King Mohammed Nadir Shah, then the Sipah Salar of the Afghan Forces. Beyond this lies the Arg, (the Royal Castle), the Palace of Dilkusha, Salamkhana (the Hall of Audience), bungalows of the Royal Family, offices of the Prime Minister, Habibia College, the French Legation, Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Istiqlal College, the tomb of Amir Abdur Rahman Khan, and the Ministries of Education, Commerce, Finance and Justice. A little further to the north the Turkish and Iranian Legations are located. Then commences the New City. Next come the Wilayat (Governor's Office, the Kotwali), the Course i-Aali, the Italian Legation, the old Habibia College (now in ruins) and the Ihzaria School. The British Legation lies further west, about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles from the city. Next to that on the top of an eminence stands Baghi Bala, a military hospital.

To the south of the Arg, the real city of Kabul is located, which is divided into two parts by the river of Kabul. The river is spanned at intervals by bridges. The main streets are all metalled and afford facilities for wheeled traffic through the city.

In the western corner of the city lies the Mashin-Khana—Government Factories (arsenal, mint, textiles, etc.)

### *Famous Government Institutions inside the City.*

- (1) Maktab-i-Habibia (Habibia College).
- (2) Maktab-i-Istiqlal (Istiqlal College).
- (3) Maktab-i-Nijat (Nijat College).
- (4) Maktab-i-Sanai Nafisa (Arts College).
- (5) Maktab-i-Tibi (Medical School).
- (6) Maktab-i-Harbia (Military College).
- (7) Maktab-i-Ihzaria (Military School).
- (8) Course-i-Aali.
- (9) Academy of Philosophy.
- (10) Science Faculty.
- (11) The Mechanical School.





## IMPORTANT ROUTES

At Kabul, besides numerous private hotels, there is a fine Government hotel, called Hotel de Kabul. It is centrally situated and is only half a mile from the Ministry of Foreign Affairs. It is furnished throughout with every regard to the comfort of the visitors. Sanitary arrangements are entirely up-to-date. Billiards. Guests are assured of the best of everything in season. The rates are moderate. The cuisine is excellent.

Only 100 yards north to the hotel stands the beautiful building of the Afghan National Bank (Banke Mille Afghan) where all sorts of banking, including exchange of foreign currency, is promptly executed. The bank holds monopoly of purchase of foreign currencies, bullion, and import of motor cars, lorries, accessories, and sugar. It is the greatest business concern of the country.

## PLACES OF INTEREST IN THE NEIGHBOURHOOD

### The Chahardeh Valley—

To the west of Kabul lies a broad valley or plain, separated from the town by hills. This plain is about 8 miles broad and 12 miles long, and is a spacious amphitheatre, encircled on all sides by lofty hills, each higher and higher till the view is terminated by the snow-covered summits of the Hindu Koh. The panorama is most lovely. The plain is watered by numerous streams, cut from the Kabul or the Paghman rivers, and covered with green smiling fields, fringed by rows of poplar, willow or *Sinjif*. The orchards, richly stocked with fruit trees, flowers, and vegetable gardens well laid out, diversify the landscape. The Kabul and the Paghman, their banks shaded by trees and here and there guarded by forts, wind through it. It is in this beautiful valley that the important buildings of Rifiqi Sanatorium, the Aliabad Dairy Farm, the Kabul University, the Public Hospital, the Lunatic Asylum, Babar's Garden, the Chihal Satoon and the Museum are located. The Tuberculosis Sanatorium of Aliabad was founded by the late King in 1933, and is being conducted on the lines of similar institutions in the western countries.

### Paghman—

Eighteen miles west of Kabul lies the happy valley of Paghman, which is picturesquely set in the lap of a lofty mountain of the same name. Paghman is a very small town, but the whole locality is exceptionally clean and healthy.

## AFGHANISTAN

It has pure invigorating ozone laden air, free from fogs and storms. Beautiful terraces and fine walks abound in all directions. It is a haven for those in need of rest. Many are the delightful excursions to be made in the neighbourhood. It is the summer residence of the King and possesses all the qualifications of an up-to-date residential town, combined with the natural beauty and running waters. It has, for ages, attracted those seeking for resort ; while affording every variety of pleasure and recreation, abounds in the sublimest beauties of nature.

### Samt-i-Shimali (Northern District)—

This beautiful country lies within an easy reach of the capital. After crossing the Khairkhana pass, 4 miles to the north, the spacious country of Samt-i-Shimali lies before you, which is about 50 miles long and 15 to 20 miles broad. This district abounds in beautiful valleys, and is extremely rich in fruit gardens, specially vine. It is from here that large quantities of grapes and raisins are exported to India *via* Peshawar. Shakar Darah (the valley of sugar, 15 miles from Kabul), Istalif (33 miles), Jabal-us-Siraj (45 miles) and Gul Bahar (50 miles) may be particularly mentioned as places of excursions. Twelve miles north of Gul Bahar lies another beautiful valley—the Panjsher, but there is no motor road leading to it, and this journey is to be made on ponies, which can be had at the rate of 4 Afghanis each. From Gul Bahar a motor road leads to the fascinating valleys of Tagab and Najrab. The distance is not more than 45 miles.

The small village of Opian and the arid plain of Bagram, noted from an archaeological point of view, are also located in the north of Samt-i-Shimali, near Chirikar.

### Logar—

Twenty miles south of Kabul lies the fertile valley of Logar, which supplies nearly all the grain to the capital.

The country round Kabul is extremely fruitful. Provisions of all kinds are abundant, while the most delicious fruits of every description are cheaper even than grain.

There are some beautiful gardens in the suburbs. Most important of them are:—(1) Babar's Garden, 2 miles west of the city. (2) Chihil Satoun, 4 miles



BAGH-I-UMUMI (PUBLIC GARDEN), PACHMAN



## IMPORTANT ROUTES

(3) Darulfunun, (Kabul University Buildings) 5 miles. (4) Gul Bagh, 7 miles. All these are situated in the famous Chahardeh Valley.

### KABUL TO KANDAHAR (Distance 315 Miles).

(a) *Kabul to Ghazni* (90 Miles.)

(b) *Ghazni to Kandahar* (225 Miles).

#### (a) *Kabul to Ghazni*—

(1) *Kabul to Arghandi* (14 Miles).—The road for the first six or seven miles runs through the highly cultivated valley of Chahardeh. After leaving Kala-i-Kazi there is an ascent over a rough stony road till within three miles of Arghandi, when there is a gradual descent. Arghandi is about 6628 feet above sea-level. Here is a Customs Post.

(2) *Arghandi to Maidan* (12 Miles).—The road is generally level. Maidan is a very beautiful and fertile tract of land. It is low and surrounded by high hills, and is intersected by numerous streams.

(3) *Maidan to Shaikhabad* (17 Miles).—Road generally level and offers no great difficulty. At four miles the river Kabul is crossed. Shaikhabad is nearly half-way between Ghazni and Kabul. From here the traveller enters the Verdak country, which also abounds in beautiful valleys.

(4) *Shaikhabad to Takyah* (14 Miles).—A few ascents and descents, but the road presents no difficulty.

(5) *Takyah to Shishgao* (16 Miles).—Height 8,500 feet. Country in the vicinity generally fertile. In some places the road is intersected by a few streams. There is a gradual ascent.

(7) *Shishgao to Ghazni* (17 Miles).—A steady ascent. The road lies through a pass, some 9,000 feet above sea-level. During winter the pass is often blocked with snow and communication between Kabul and Ghazni is impeded for some days.

#### **Ghazni** (Height 7,280 feet, Population 20,000)—

The capital of the Ghaznivides and the principal stage between Kabul and Kandahar, occupies an important strategical point, since it commands the road through the Gomal pass. The town lies at the top of the Tarnak valley, close under the



## AFGHANISTAN

termination of a range of hills, which, running east and west, shuts up the valley and separates it from the valley of Kabul.

It is built upon an isolated ridge, on a natural mound, partly rocky and partly composed of earth. On the highest portion of the town, on an elevation of 150 feet above the plain, stands the citadel, which is nearly in the centre of the town, though touching the wall on the north side. From its eminent position the citadel completely dominates the city of Ghazni.

The town is surrounded by a high wall, having a circuit of about a mile and a quarter. The form of the town is a sort of irregular square, the wall being built so as to suit the outline of the mound on which it rests. The foundation of the wall is a little above the surrounding country, and as it winds round the hill it presents a very formidable appearance. The mound which it encircles, in fact, resembles a fortress of which the citadel is the apex.

The present town of Ghazni is in no way attractive. It is very small and has narrow lanes, not worth its great name. But Ghazni is still famous for its shrines and other archæological remains. The most famous shrines are those of Sultan Subagtagin (977—997 A.D.) Sultan Mahmud-i-Ghaznawi (997—1030), Masud (1030—1040), Behram Shah (1117—1153) Hakim Sinai, the famous Sufi poet, Ali Lala, Bahlol-i-Dana, and Sayid Hassan.

The country round Ghazni is extremely fertile. There are innumerable orchards and vineyards. All sorts of deciduous fruits and vegetables are produced in great abundance. In addition to the land under cultivation there are rich pastures. The climate of Ghazni during summer is very pleasant, the heat is less than that which prevails at Kabul.

### (b) Ghazni to Kandahar (225 Miles)—

For the greater part the road is level. It runs from north-east to south-west. From Ghazni to Kalat-i-Ghilzai the road descends gradually. On leaving Ghazni the Tarnak valley is generally narrow, in some places not exceeding half a mile in breadth. As it approaches Kandahar, however, it expands greatly and attains a breadth of not less than thirty miles. The height of some of the peaks that hem this valley, does not exceed 6,000 feet. The valley, though level for the most part, is, in general, shut up by a series of low undulating hills, rising from



H. E. MIRZA MOHAMMED KHAN,  
MINISTER OF TRADE



H. E. ABDUR RAHIM KHAN, MINISTER OF  
FOWAID-I-AMA (PUBLIC WORKS)



## IMPORTANT ROUTES

the banks of the Tarnak river. These hills are very bare and uninteresting, having a scanty covering of low thorny bushes. The open portions of the valley are, however, fertile and well-cultivated.

(1) *Ghazni to Mukar* (68 miles)—The road lies directly to the south. It skirts the hilly tract at the base of the Gal Range. The first stage is Mani. After Mani the road runs through a spacious plain called Dasht-i-Shilgar. Road is good but the country is barren and sandy. Cultivation generally depends on subterranean channels—Karez. At Mukar itself cultivation is more advanced and provisions abundant. There is a Government hotel, furnished with every regard to the comfort of the visitors. Petrol Pump.

There are numerous springs in the neighbourhood.

(2) *Mukar to Kilat-i-Ghilzai* (73 Miles)—The road for the first 14 miles leads on a grassy tract with low hills on either side. The country round is an open plateau, skirted by small hills. It is fertile and well-cultivated. The road from Aghojan onwards passes through a wilderness of undulating character, intersected by ravines.

Kalat-i-Ghilzai is 5,540 feet above sea-level. It is a strong fortress on the right bank of the Tarnak, and has a Government hotel.

(3) *Kilat-i-Ghilzai to Kandahar* (84 Miles)—From here Kandahar lies due west. Till Jaldak (14 miles) the road lies over an undulating plain, a small strip on either side of the river being under cultivation. Jaldak lies on a sandy soil, dotted with patches of brushwood.

From Jaldak onwards the character of the country remains the same, but the water of the river is almost exhausted. The last stage is Mohmand, only 10 miles from Kandahar. The road leaves the river and leads across a vast plain, sloping towards the west. This is the plain of Kandahar. About 4 miles outside the city there is a beautiful garden called Manzil Bagh, a fine place of rest.

**Kandahar** (Height 3,500 feet) Population 60,000—

Kandahar is 125 miles from Quetta and about 72 miles from the railway terminus of New Chaman. It is, of course, a point of great strategical importance,

## AFGHANISTAN

and is situated on a level and richly cultivated plain at the foot of Tarnak valley, and is separated from the river of that name by a short range of hills which divides the lower part of the valley and runs parallel with the river for about 20 miles. These hills are named Torkani—Black Stone, and attain a height of some 1,000 feet (above the plain). Kandahar is surrounded on three sides by high, bare, sharp-pointed rocky mountains, rising abruptly from the plain. The valley of Kandahar is extremely fertile and well-watered. It can boast of rich meadows clothed with green turf, of gardens and orchards full of fruit trees, and of fields of corn, watered by numerous running streams.

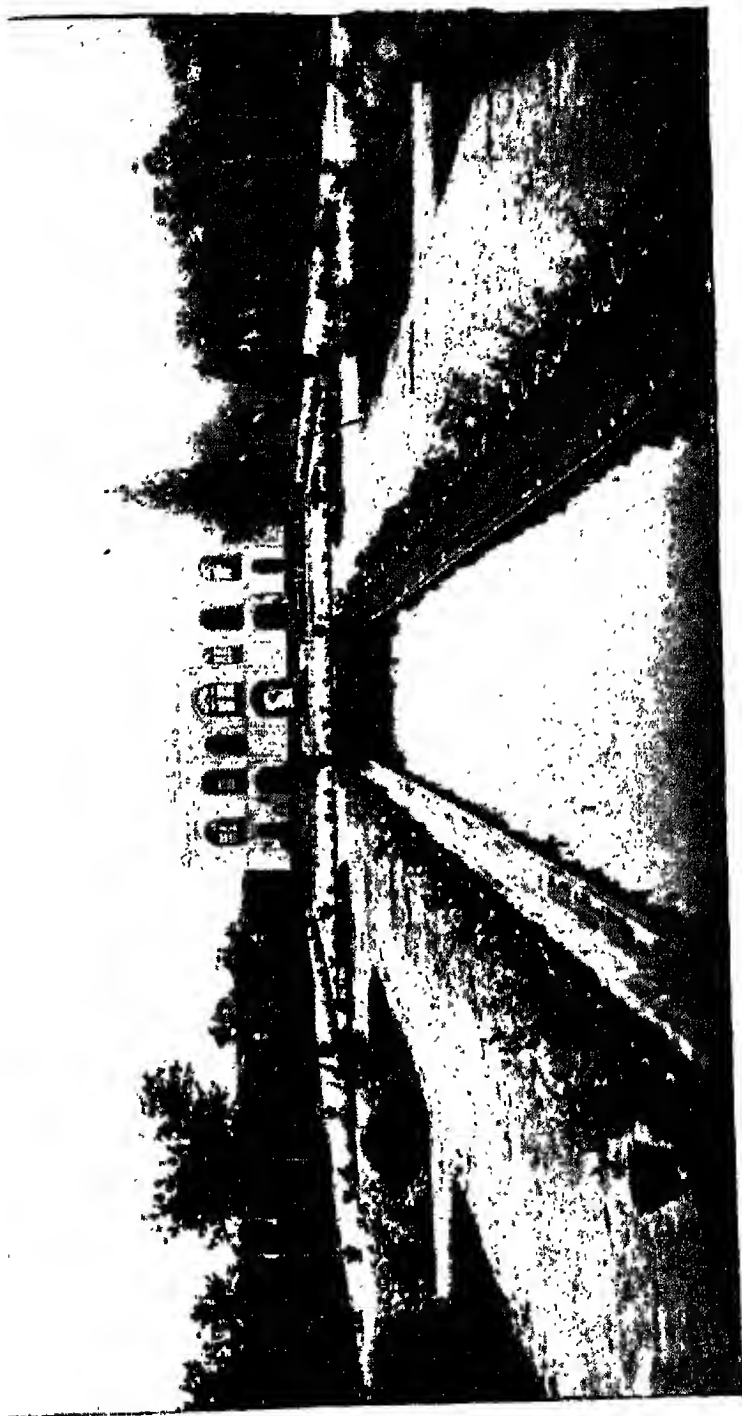
The town of Kandahar is large and populous. The shape of the city is an irregular parallelogram 2,000 to 600 yards, the length being from north to south. The streets are wide and well-built, and flanked by trees. The tomb of Ahmad Shah-i-Durrani (1747—1773) is located here. Its gilded dome is encompassed by beautiful minarets. It towers above the adjacent buildings, and attracts the attention of the traveller from a great distance. At Kokran, not far from the city lies the tomb of the Ghilzai hero, Mir Wais Khan (1709—1715). Recently a very beautiful mausoleum was built over this. A few miles to the north-west of the city, on Kabul-Herat road, stands the beautiful Column of Maiwand. It was erected during the reign of the late King by H. E. 'A. A.' Mohammed Gul Khan, then Governor of Kandahar, to commemorate the brilliant victory of the Afghans against the British (1880).

Chihal Zina, the Forty Steps, which lies about one mile and a half to the south-west of the city, is another place of interest to the traveller. Besides these the surrounding country of Kandahar is very rich in archaeological remains.

Kandahar is an important trade centre of the country. It carries on a large trade with India *via* New Chamun. Its climate is cheering in winter, but spring is considered the most pleasant time. During summer it is dry and hot.

### **Kandahar to Kala-i-Jadid (old name Spin Bolak) Distance 65 Miles.—**

This route, for a distance of 12 miles, leads straight across a tolerably fertile and well-populated country. The bed of Tarnak is crossed *en route*. After this the route, though level, is often broken into ravines, and the fertility decreases. The river Arghasan, one of the tributaries of the Helmand, is crossed. The road then lies through a small pass, at an elevation of 4,100 feet, and then descends



MANZAL BAGH, KANDAHAR



## IMPORTANT ROUTES

into the valley of Dori. Here all cultivation ceases. Even the water of the river, though abundant, is slightly saline. Its banks are unfertile and there is no grass and but little cultivation. The population is scanty.

At Takhtipul, 35 miles from Kandahar, provisions can be had. The road then crosses an undulating plain and barren country to Kala-i-Jadid (the New Fort) facing British New Chaman. Here passports are examined. Customs Office and Petrol Pump. From here New Chaman, the British Frontier post and railway terminus, is only 7 miles.

### KANDAHAR TO HERAT (Distance 407 Miles)

Herat, the westernmost province of Afghanistan, is reached from Kandahar by way of Girishk, Farah and Sabzwar. Road, for the most part, runs over a level plain.

(1) *Kandahar to Girishk (75 Miles).*—Road level. Numerous ruined cities *en route*; Bust being the most important of them. At six miles from Kandahar the Arghandab is crossed. Midway between Girishk and Kandahar lies the historical plain of Maiwand, signalised by the brilliant Afghan victory of July 1880. In the low river land on the south of Girishk there are charming gardens. Villages are numerous and every one is a thriving centre. The pasturage is both rich and abundant, while the agriculture capacity of the Zamindawar lands is well-known. At about 72 miles from Kandahar the Helmand is reached. This river, the normal width of which is here only 120 yards, rises in flood with the melting of snow, and often attains a breadth of more than a mile. A concrete bridge is being built across it. On the right bank of the Helmand, about one and a half mile away from the stream, stands the fort of Girishk. The position of the fort is very important; it commands the ordinary passage and summer ford of the Helmand, which covers the fort to the east.

(2) *Girishk to Farah (Girishk to Dilaram 75 Miles, Dilaram to Farah 83 Miles).*—Road is generally level, want of water being the chief drawback. Here lies the Bakwa plain—a dead level stretch without trees or growth of any kind to vary its monotony. Dilaram (the Peace of Mind) is a small halting place *en route*.

Farah, the seat of the province of the same name is 2,460 feet above sea-level, and is 174 miles south of Herat. It is enclosed by a rampart, crowned with towers,



## AFGHANISTAN

and surrounded by a wide and deep ditch. Though much in ruins its strategical importance is in no way diminished, as it commands the Kandahar-Herat road, and the northern entrance to Sistan. Hotel and Petrol.

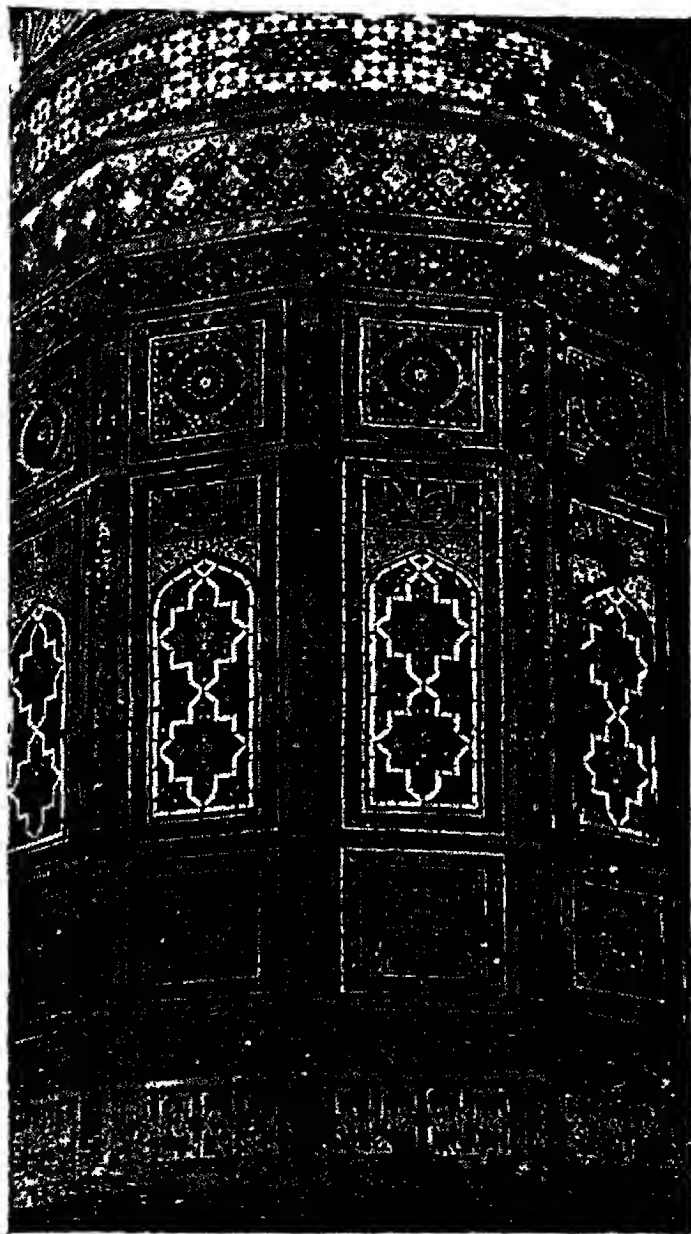
(3) *Farah to Sabzwar (94 Miles).*—Three rivers are crossed *en route*—the Farah, Khash Rud and Harut. The banks of the Farah are covered with a jungle growth of tamarisk and mimosa. The country between Farah and Sabzwar is undulating, a vast jumble of villages and low hills, with small plains, inhabited mostly by nomadic tribes.

(4) *Sabzwar (3,350 feet).*—An important strategical post on Kandahar-Herat road, is situated almost midway between Farah and Herat. It stands on the left bank of the Harut river, at the foot of the outlying spurs of the Siah Koh (Black Mountain). Beyond and partly surrounding it is a wide open plain, well-irrigated from the waters of the Harut, and as a consequence highly productive. Sabzwar is an important fertile district of Herat province. It is enclosed by a high wall, having four gates.

(5) *Sabzwar to Herat (30 Miles).*—Due north and at a distance of 80 miles from Sabzwar, lies Herat, in a military sense the most important city of Central Asia.

**Herat** (Population 85,000, height 3,030 feet above sea-level)—

The province of Herat is extremely fertile and is watered by the Hari Rud. It is called the "Granary of Central Asia". The town itself lies to the north of the river. Its strategical importance is scarcely to be underrated, for here converge the important routes from the Caspian, Merv, Bukhara and Kandahar. The old city lies in a hollow, and is surrounded by massive walls, and is guarded by a grim-looking citadel. The city is interesting but not inviting-looking. Like Kandahar it is also a square mud-built fort, with this exception, that whereas Kandahar is simply surrounded by walls, Herat is encircled by an enormous mound or rampart of earth, on the top of which the walls are built. The city is divided into four quarters by the four principal streets, which run straight inwards, meeting in the centre, under a central dome called Charsu. Recently the foundation of a new city was laid outside the ramparts, and the construction work is progressing steadily. The most important place in the old city is the citadel, standing on a height towering over the rest of



A PART OF THE FAMOUS MINARET OF THE  
GRAND MOSQUE OF HERAT



## IMPORTANT ROUTES

the city. From here a capital view is obtained of the country beyond. The only building in the city noticeable by its size and height is Juma Masjid, a large, lofty, arched structure in the north-eastern portion of the city. It was built in the 15th century and was then one of the most beautiful mosques ever built in Asia. It was adorned with most magnificent carvings, precious mosaic, and other elaborate and costly embellishments. Mussalah, a group of beautiful buildings outside the city, is now in ruins. It consisted of three buildings running north-east and south-west, and covering a distance of nearly six hundred yards from end to end. Of the eastern building, known generally as the Madrasah or College, nothing but two high arches, facing each other and four minarets remain. The arches are some 80 feet in height, and are covered with the remains of what was once fine tile of mosaic work of beautiful and artistic designs, now much defaced. The tiles on the minarets have mostly been worn off by stress of weather, but inside the arches the beautiful mosaic work is still in many places almost perfect—sufficient to give an idea of the splendour of the building when new. The minarets of the Madrasah are taller than the rest, and are about 150 feet in height. Between the Madrasah and the Mussalah is a domed building commonly called the tomb of Shah Rukh. This was formerly covered with blue tiles and scrolls of text from the Quran, but is much weatherworn.

Herat, too, is famous for its various shrines, the most important are those of Maulana Abdur Rahman Jami, Abdullah, son of Moaawiah, a grandson of Abu Talib, Ziarat-i-Shazadah Kasim, Amir Dost Mohammed Khan, Abdul Walid and Khwajah Abdullah Ansar at Guzargah, four miles to the north of the city. The shrine of Guzargah is distinguishable from afar by a huge lofty square-topped mass of building over a high arch. This shrine is well worth a visit, if only to see the simple yet handsome tomb of Amir Dost Mohammed Khan and the handsome carved marble work on the tomb of the saint, Khwajah Abdullah Ansar.

The province of Herat is famous for its fertility, for its delicious and multifarious fruits and its breed of fine horses. There are more than 50 varieties of good grapes, Lal being the most important of them. Herat has endured innumerable calamities—wars, pestilence and famines have had their effect, but in spite of all this even now it can boast of being a flourishing city of Central Asia.

Herat is also noted for the beauty of its gardens. The most important gardens are:—Takht-i-Safar, Bagh-i-Shahi, Bagh-i-Karta, Bagh-i-Rubati Ghorian, Bagh-i-Maulana Jami and Bagh-i-Qalicha. It is also famous for the variety of its games—deer, pheasants, partridges, markhor, hares and various kinds of birds are found along the

## AFGHANISTAN

mountain sides and the neighbouring plains. Water fowls are abundant at Rubat-i-Ghorian, Kolijang and Ab-i-Jalil.

**Other places of interest are :—**

(1) *Kimini*.—A fertile valley watered by the Hari Rud. It is only six miles south of the main road. It is a very beautiful spot and has a few important relics, foremost among these is a high column.

(2) *Dar-i-Takht*.

(3) *Obah*.

(4) *Siahoshan*.

**Herat to Islam Kila (76 Miles)—**

From Herat a road runs due west and leads to Islam Kila, facing Yusifabad and Karez, the Iranian border posts. Islam Kila is the Afghan frontier post. The road runs, for the most part, on an undulating plain. At Tirpul, midway between Herat and Islam Kila, are situated the famous petroleum springs. The fort of Islam Kila is now demolished and a new one is being built about half a mile to the west of it.

### KABUL TO MAZAR-I-SHARIF (Distance 389 Miles)

**Kabul to Charikar (40 miles)—**

After crossing the Khaikhana pass, 4 miles north of Kabul, the traveller finds himself in a spacious and beautiful plain, called Samt-i-Shimali (the Northern District). On every side the eye meets pretty green spots, some of them being the most fascinating of the Afghan valleys. Road is level and for the most part flanked with mulberry trees. Provisions and water abundant. There is a steady fall from the Khaikhana pass right up to Charikar.

Charikar is a small but flourishing town. It is noted for its fruits, which ripe earlier than those of Kabul. From here the road branches off, one runs to the right and leads to Gul Bahar, a beautiful valley at the foot of Hindu Koh. It is only 10 miles from Charikar. The other branch, running parallel to the Paghman range, crosses a small iron bridge—Pul-i-Matak (Matak's Bridge) as it is called. A few furlongs ahead it branches off again, one goes to the right and leads to Jabul-us-Siraj, a fascinating valley. Here are located the Hydro-Electric House, supplying electricity to the capital, and the Government Cotton Factory. Jabul-us-Siraj is only four miles from the Matak Bridge.



H. E. MIR ATA MOHAMMED KHAN,  
PRESIDENT OF THE SENATE



H. E. ABDUL AHAD KHAN, PRESIDENT OF THE  
NATIONAL ASSEMBLY



## IMPORTANT ROUTES

The other branch, which turns to the left, passes through a very narrow gorge and enters the beautiful valley of Ghorband, which is about 60 miles long and one to ten miles broad. It is encompassed by huge craggy mountains on either side, in some places they are not more than 1,000 yards apart. Thus a very beautiful valley is hemmed in by these barren rocks, and it is chiefly this contrast which greatly enhances its beauty. All along its length right up to the foot of the Shibar pass, the road runs roughly parallel to the Ghorband river. It often skirts difficult hills with deep ascents and descents. The valley is famous for its fruits, specially it is the home of almonds and peaches.

The famous stages *en route* are Siah Gird (70 miles from Kabul), Chahardeh (78 miles) and Qazi Beza (at the foot of Shibar pass 111 miles). The Ghorband takes its source from this pass.

### Shibar to the Shikari Pass—

About 19 miles to the west of Shibar the road branches off, one going to right, enters the Shikari pass, whence it leads to Mazar-i-Sharif, the second turns left and leads to the city of Caves—Bamian, which is only 15 miles from the junction and 145 miles from the capital. The Shikari road runs along the Bamian river, which now flows to the north-west. Shikari pass is 130 miles from Kabul and 259 miles from Mazar-i-Sharif. This distance of 259 miles, from a geographical point of view, can easily be divided into three parts. The road for the first 90 miles runs through a very difficult country. It is hemmed in by huge precipitous mountains of different colours, rich with remains of old cities and forts.

For the next 80 miles the road runs through a district of small hills chiefly composed of earth. Some of these hills are covered with small bushes. The road for the most part, due to the structure of the country, is dusty. Remains of stupas and ancient cities can be seen on all sides. The remaining distance of 89 miles is a vast plain of loess—this is the plain of ancient Bactria.

After Shikari pass the scenery is most interesting. Ruins of ancient cities such as Sar Khushk and Sukkan are met *en route*. At the termination of the pass lies Mekh-i-Zarin, the Golden Peg. Here is a nice Government hotel, fully furnished. Petrol Pump. Provisions abundant. The whole locality is famous for the variety of its games. There are trouts in the rivers, and pheasants and partridges along the mountain sides. Doabi Mekh-i-Zarin is about 163 miles from Kabul. Here the



## AFGHANISTAN

Saighan-Kamard stream flows into the Bamian, and that is why the place is called Doab—two waters.

The combined stream then flows towards Tala and Barfak, the famous coal mines. The road running parallel to it enters another gorge which terminates at the coal mines. Thence commences another range of hills, with sharp pointed summits. These hills are of beautiful colours—red, grey, yellow and black predominate. At Doshi Bridge (224 miles from Kabul) the Indirab river joins the Shikari. At Khumri Bridge the road branches off. One turning to north-east leads to Khanabad, which is 69 miles from this place. The road no longer goes along the river, which now flows due north towards the town of Baghlan, and after irrigating Kunduz empties itself into the Amu.

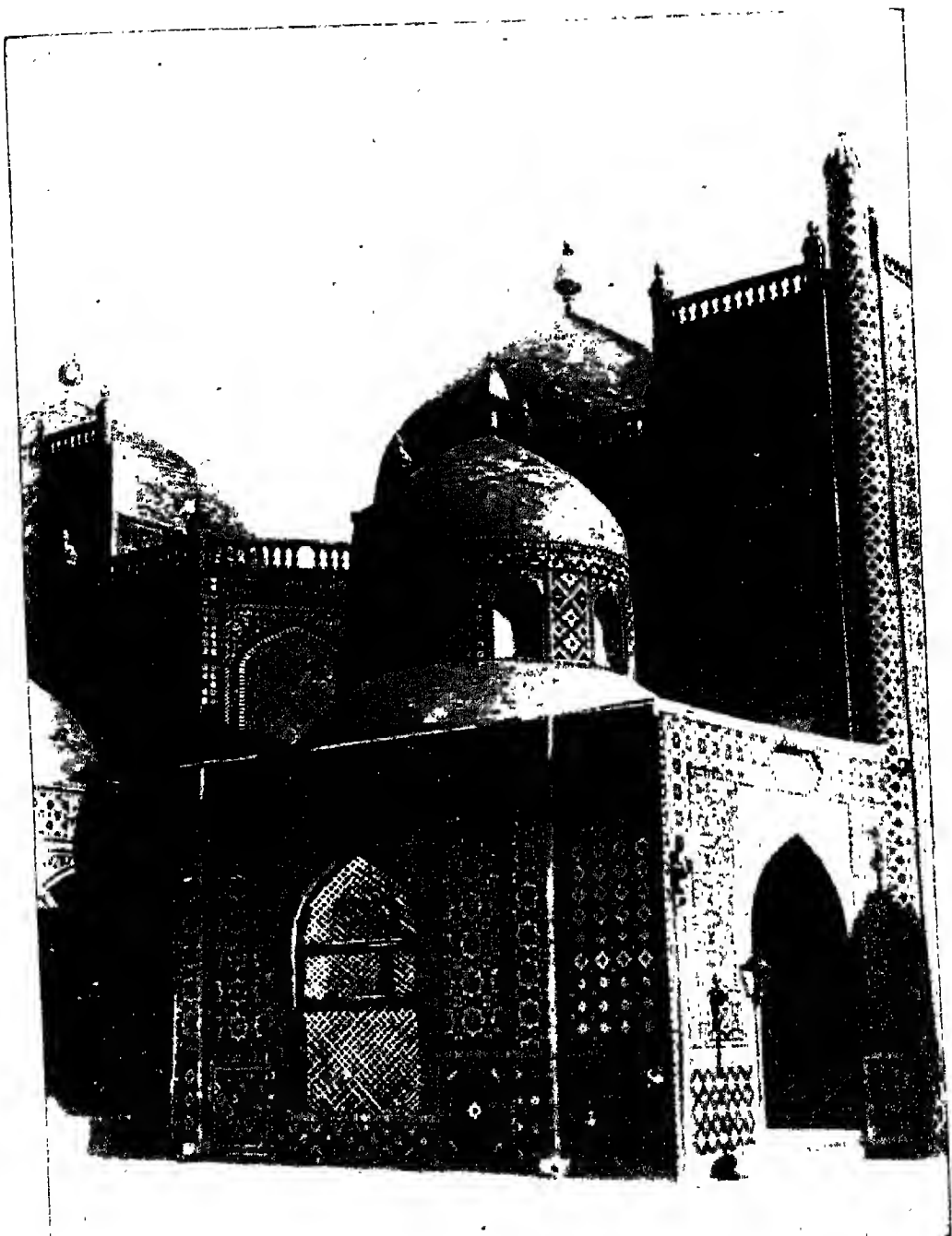
The other turning to the left enters an undulating plain. At Rubatak the neighbouring hills are all covered with pistachio trees. After crossing this pass the traveller finds himself in a vast plain, where lies the historical town of Aibak. The whole of the district is full of precious remains, stupas, monasteries, forts, etc. The foundation of a new city is also laid here. Here is a small hotel. Provisions are abundant, for Aibak is a fertile plain, and is watered by the Khulm river. The ancient route *via* Bamian, Saighan, and Kamard meets the present route at this place.

From Aibak Mazar is about 90 miles. After crossing the plain of Hazarat Sultan and Sabad we come to the fertile valley of Tashqurghan, noted for its beautiful garden of Jahan Numa, the Mirror of the World. Tashqurghan is 351 miles from Kabul. Relics of the ancient city of Shahr Banu can still be seen. Provisions abundant.

From here a road goes due east and leads to Khanabad *via* Mir Alam and Kunduz. The main road turning to the west crosses a vast plain, and *via* Gor Mar leads to the famous city of Mazar-i-Sharif.

**Mazar-i-Sharif.** (Population 55,000, Height 1,265 feet)—

It is supposed to be the resting place of the fourth Caliph, Hazrat Ali, and is therefore named Mazar-i-Sharif, Sacred Tomb. It is held in greatest veneration by the Muslims of all sects. The tomb consists of two lofty cupolas, which were built some 500 years ago. It is the centre of a flourishing province and is



THE ROZA (SHRINE) OF MAZAR-I-SHARIF



## IMPORTANT ROUTES

an important commercial town of Northern Afghanistan. The country in the vicinity is extremely rich and productive. Its melons and water-melons are of the best quality and noted throughout the country. It has innumerable good pastures where flocks of sheep and horses are reared. During spring these pastures are full of beautiful flowers of various colours. A fair called *Mela-i-Gul-i-Snrkh* (Red Flower) is held there every spring.

As a province Mazar-i-Sharif is ranked among the most important in the State. Its position is in no way less than that of Herat or Kandahar. It contains the fertile districts of Tashqurghan, Aibak, Sangcharak, Saripul, Balkh, Daulatabad, Aqchah and Shibarghan. The limits of the province include the southern half of the Oxus basin, from the frontier of Badakhshan to Khamiab. The Oxus thus forms the northern border, while to the south it is contained by the high mountains of the Hindu Koh, Baba and Firoz Koh. ✓

**Mazar-i-Sharif to Herat** (507 Miles *via* Balkh, Aqchah, Shibarghan, Shah Mardan, Maimanah, Bala Murghab, Kila-i-Naw and Sabzak pass)—

(1) *Mazar-i-Sharif to Balkh* (12 miles).—Road level. The soil is of greyish colour and is very rich. The city of Balkh lies to the west of Mazar.

This city, which once covered a circuit of 20 miles, is now in ruins. The whole plain is littered with ruins of the highest importance, which still await the spade of an explorer. Even to this day many coins and statues are found in the plain.

The modern town, with its small number of houses, is scarcely a shadow of its past glory. The Arab historians used to call it *Umm-ul-Balad*, the Mother of Cities. Recently the foundation of a new city was laid on the site of the old one, and its construction is now in progress. The spectacle of the ruined Balkh is extremely touching. Very little is left of the massive walls which once surrounded it. All that is left of it is a mound of dried mud, worn by weather into all manner of desolate and fantastic shapes. The whole of the northern portion is a heap of dust and debris. It is only to the west where three lofty arches still mark the remains of the *Jamia Masjid*. The remains of two gates are also to be seen up to this day.

The district of Balkh is still very famous for its fertility.

## AFGHANISTAN

(2) *Balkh to Andkhui (133 Miles)*.—(Balkh to Nasratabad 40 miles, Aqchah 56 miles, Shibarghan 93 miles, Khwajah Dokoh 101 miles, Andkhui 133 miles).

Road for the first few miles is level and good. After Aqchah the road, though level, is sandy.

Andkhui is a small town and has a good trade with Russia and Bukhara. It has a small fort.

(3) *Andkhui to Maimanah (85 Miles)*.—For the first 53 miles there is a vast plain. Then the traveller finds himself in an undulating plain of small hills. Maimanah is a small commercial centre. It is noted for its fruits. It is the centre of the province of the same name.

(4) *Maimanah to Bala Murghab (107 Miles)*.—An undulating sandy plain for the most part. Important stages *en route* are Ilmar, Kaisar, Kurmach, Bukiz and Maruchak.

(5) *Bala Murghab to Kila-i-Naw (71 Miles)*.—No change in the general appearance of the country. Kila-i-Naw is an important trade centre.

(6) *Kila-i-Naw to Herat (99 Miles)*.—After a journey of thirty miles we reach the Parapomismus range. The road lies through a pass which is about eight miles and a half long. It is called Sabzak or Chashmai Sabz pass, and is only 3,400 feet above sea-level, that is, only 1,000 feet higher than that of the land on either side. The pass offers no obstacle.

After crossing the pass we enter the plain of Herat, watered by the Hari Rud. The road is level and provisions of all sorts can be had at various places.

Other famous passes across the Parapomismus are Zarmast, Kashka, Hazrat-i-Baba, Ardewan and Afzal. The new motor road passes through the Zarmast pass. The scenery, in some places, is excellent.

### **Kabul to Bamian (Distance 145 Miles)—**

From Shikari pass the Mazar-Kabul road branches off into two. One goes straight to the north and leads to Mazar, the other turning left, runs roughly parallel to the Bamian river (upstream), skirts a range of hills. After six miles from the pass the traveller can see the remains of an old fort perched at a steep rock. This



H. E. RAHMULLAH KHAN, MINISTER  
POST AND TELEGRAPH



H. E. MOHAMMED YAHYA KHAN,  
MINISTER OF HEALTH



## IMPORTANT ROUTES

is called the city of Zuhak-i-Maran. A little further the valley widens. To the right of this valley at a distance of some 15 miles from the pass lies the City of Caves—more than 2,000 in number. This is the historical city of Bamian, now in ruins. It lies at the foot of a hill, and is 8,400 feet above sea-level.

Bamian was an important commercial centre in early and middle ages. At the time of Huiien Tsiang, the Chinese pilgrim, the inhabitants of the town professed Buddhism. According to him there were more than ten monasteries and more than a thousand monks at Bamian. The two colossal idols, which exist even to this day, were already in existence when this Chinese traveller paid a visit to the town. The larger figure in the western corner of the city, is 53 metres high, and is that of a man. Its face is slightly disfigured and one of its legs is broken. The smaller, about two hundred yards to the right, is that of a woman and is 35 metres high. It is also slightly disfigured.

The present Government, which shows great interest in the relics of the past, is diligently repairing and properly looking after ancient monuments, and simply for the comforts of the travellers, who every year visit this place in large numbers, has built a nice hotel with up-to-date comforts.

To the left of the city on a mound one can still see the remains of another city, called Shahr-i-Ghulghula (the City of Uproar). The whole valley is full of such ancient monuments. About 40 miles west of Bamian lies Band-i-Amir, the Amir's Dam, a fine natural tank encompassed by high hills of various colours. The whole locality is of extreme beauty. The water of the lake is of bluish-green colour and quite transparent.

The Hajdah Nahr (18 canals) of Balkh, so famous in local history, received water from this lake.

### **Kabul to Khanabad (Distance 323 miles)—**

At Puli Khumri the Kabul-Mazar road branches off. One turns to the right

---

*\*Mr. Masson who happened to visit Bamian about the year 1840, inscribed this line on the top of a cave (Smooch) :*

*If any fool this high Smooch explore.*

*Know ye, Charles Masson has been here before.*



## AFGHANISTAN

and *via* Baghlan, leads to Khanabad. Khanabad is 69 miles from Puli Khumri. The road, for the most part, is level. But after Baghlan it offers difficulty.

Khanabad is a small town. It is thinly populated.

From Khanabad roads lead to various directions. One runs straight to north to Hazrat-i-Imam. Here lies a vast jungle with various kinds of animals. The province of Kataghan is noted for its fine games.

Next to Imam lies the hilly district of Badakhshan. It is bounded on the north and east by the course of the Oxus, south by the province of Kataghan. It is a country of numerous lofty mountain ranges in whose bosom some very fine valleys are located. In winter the climate is severe, the mountain passes are blocked by snow, and the rivers are frozen over. The rainfall, due to the presence of forests, is sufficient. Badakhshan has a considerable mineral wealth. Salt deposits and ruby, lapis-lazuli and sulphur mines are known to exist in several places. It is also noted for its fruits.

To the east of Khanabad, at a distance of 117 miles, lies the important town of Faizabad. Further east the Alpine territory of Wakhan is situated. Due to the difficult nature of the country, Wakhan is an isolated part of Afghanistan. It consists of two upland valleys which are watered by the Panja. The valleys are hemmed in on either side by lofty mountains, those to the south form the northern section of the Hindu Koh, here crossed by very difficult passes, the easiest of which is Broghil (12,000) leading to Chitral and Gilgit. The chief resources of the people are derived from the flocks of sheep and droves of Tibetan Yak. Wakhan is too elevated and sterile for tillage. In this district the lowest hamlet is 8,000 feet, the highest is no less than 11,000 feet above sea-level.

**Kabul to Gardez.** (Distance 70 Miles) *via* Chahar-Asia, Mohammed-Agha, Hissarak and Altamoor—

The road for the most part runs through the fertile valley of Logar, which terminates at the foot of the Altamoor pass. Then there is a steep ascent, and the road skirts difficult hills, often blocked with snow during winter. Tractors are used to keep it open for traffic. After crossing the pass there is a steady descent nearly up to Gardez.



THE AUTHOR



HIS HONOUR ABDUL AHMAD KHAN,  
ASSISTANT MINISTER OF EDUCATION



## IMPORTANT ROUTES

**Gardez** is an important strategical town guarding the roads from Khost, Urgoon and Ghazni. Recently a new fort was built here. The climate of Gardez in winter is colder than that of Kabul, but its summer is very genial. It is the chief town of the Southern Province. From Gardez onwards commences the forest area, which supplies all timber for Kabul. From here motor roads radiate in all directions, one goes to Khost, which lies about 60 miles to the south-east, another runs to Ghazni, a third leads to Urgoon, 56 miles to the south of Gardez, while a fourth runs through Chakmani to Jaji country.



## APPENDICES



# APPENDIX I

## DISTANCES

Distances of important places from Kabul—

	Miles
Kabul to Abdani 1 ... ..	357
„ Abdani 2 ... ..	365
„ Abdani 3 ... ..	384
„ Aibak ... ..	310
„ Akhund Musa ... ..	138
„ Andkhui <i>via</i> Mazar ... ..	522
„ Aqchah <i>via</i> Mazar ... ..	445
„ Aqchashmah ... ..	360
„ Arghandab (The) ... ..	321
„ Arghandi ... ..	14
„ Baghlan ... ..	274
„ Bagh-i-Jahan Numa (of Tashqurghan) ... ..	351
„ Bala Murghab ( <i>via</i> Maimanah) ... ..	721
„ Balkh ... ..	401
„ Balulah ... ..	126
„ Bamian ... ..	145
„ Band-i-Amir ... ..	185
„ Band-i-Ghazi ... ..	19
„ Barfak ... ..	180
„ Barikab ... ..	47
„ Butkhak ... ..	12
„ Chinzai ... ..	266
„ Chardeh Ghorband ... ..	78
„ Charikar ... ..	40
„ Chashma-i-Sher ... ..	271
„ Dar-i-Shikari ... ..	130
„ Deh Dadi (Mazar) ... ..	398
„ Dekka (old road) ... ..	166
„ Dekka (new road) ... ..	158



# AFGHANISTAN

	Miles
Kabul to Dhahan-i-Ghori ...	244
„ Dilaram ...	447
„ Doab-i-Mekhi-Zarin ...	163
„ Faizabad ...	460
„ Fatehabad ...	100
„ Farah ...	528
„ Fermanbeg ...	59
„ Gandumak ...	82
„ Gardez ...	70
„ Gazistan ...	371
„ Ghazni ...	90
„ Girishk ...	390
„ Gul Bahar ...	50
„ Helmand (Kandahar-Herat road) ...	388
„ Herat ...	722
„ Ishkashim ...	397
„ Islam Kila (via Kandahar) ...	798
„ Istaliff ...	33
„ Jabul-us-Siraj ...	45
„ Jalalabad (old road) ...	124
„ Jalalabad (new road) ...	116
„ Jigdalik (old road) ...	66
„ Jigdalik (new road) ...	58
„ Kandahar ...	315
„ Katasang ...	54
„ Khakijabbar ...	26
„ Khanabad ...	323
„ Khost ...	130
„ Kila Ghi ...	241
„ Kishkinakhud ...	354
„ Kila-i-Jadid ...	380
„ Kilat-i-Ghilzai ...	231
„ Kunduz ...	339
„ Maimanah (via Mazar) ...	607
„ Matak Bridge ...	42
„ Mazar-i-Sharif ...	389

# APPENDIX I

				Miles
Kabul to Mukar	...	...	...	158
" Nahrin	...	...	...	371
" Nasratabad	...	...	...	429
" Nimla (old road)	...	...	...	98
" Nimla (new road)	...	...	...	90
" Paghman	...	...	...	18
" Pul-i-Anaristan	...	...	...	175
" Pul-i-Begum	...	...	...	404
" Pul-i-Doshi	...	...	...	224
" Pul-i-Khumri	...	...	...	254
" Pul-i-Matak	...	...	...	42
" Pul-i-Ranga	...	...	...	74
" Pul-i-Toti	...	...	...	406
" Pul-i-Zafar	...	...	...	408
" Qazi Beza	...	...	...	111
" Sabzwar	...	...	...	642
" Sara-i-Khwajah	...	...	...	20
" Samadi	..	...	...	441
" Shaikhabad	...	...	...	43
" Shibarghan	..	...	...	482
" Shikari Pass	..	...	...	130
" Shirin Tagab	...	...	...	582
" Shorab	...	...	...	340
" Siah Girdi Ghorband	...	...	...	70
" Siracha Bridge	...	...	...	127
" Surkhpul	...	...	...	74

# AFGHANISTAN

## CHIEF ROUTES

**Torkham to Kabul *via* Lataband Pass, 165 miles, old road 173—**

				Miles
Torkham to Dekka	...	...	...	7
„ Jalalabad	..	...	..	49
„ Fatehabad	...	...	..	65
„ Nimla	...	...	...	75
„ Gandumak	...	...	...	83
„ Surkhpul	..	...	..	91
„ Kolali	...	...	..	97
„ Jigdalik	..	..	...	107
„ Fermanbeg	...	...	...	110
„ Junction with the old road		...	...	117
„ Lataband Pass	...	...	...	127
„ Butkhak	...	...	...	153
„ Bagrami	...	...	..	160
„ Kabul	.	...	...	165

**Kabul to Kandahar—**

315

Kabul to Arghandi	...	...	...	14
„ Maidan	...	...	...	26
„ Shaikhabad	...	..	...	43
„ Takyah	...	...	...	57
„ Shashgao	..	...	...	73
„ Ghazni	...	...	...	90
„ Mukar	...	...	...	158
„ Kilat-i-Ghilzat	...	...	...	231
„ Mohmand	...	...	...	313
„ Kandahar	...	...	...	315

**Kandahar to Herat—**

407

Kandahar to Arghandab	...	...	...	6
„ Kishkinakhud	...	...	...	39
„ Helmand	...	...	...	73

# APPENDIX I

				Miles
Kandahar to Girishk	.....	...	...	75
" Dilaram	...	...	...	150
" Farah	...	...	...	233
" Sabzwar	...	...	...	327
" Herat	...	...	...	407
" Kila-i-Jadid (facing New Chaman)	...	...	...	65
" Islam Kila (facing Karez, Persian frontier post)	...	...	...	76
Kabul to Bamian	...	...	...	145
<b>Herat to Mazar-i-Sharif via Maimanah—</b>				<b>510</b>
Herat to Kila-i-Naw	...	...	...	99
" Bala Murghab	...	...	...	170
" Maimanah	...	...	...	277
" Andkhui	...	...	...	365
" Shibarghan	...	...	...	405
" Aqchah	...	...	...	442
" Nasratabad	...	...	...	458
" Balkh	...	...	...	498
" Mazar-i-Sharif	...	...	...	510
<b>Kabul to Mazar-i-Sharif—</b>				<b>389</b>
Kabul (Arg) to Sirai Khwajah	...	...	..	20
" Charikar	...	...	..	40
" Matak Bridge	...	...	..	46
" Siah Girdi Ghorband	...	...	..	70
" Pul-i-Rangah	...	...	..	74
" Chahardeh Ghorband	...	...	...	78
" Qazi Beza (below Shibar Pass)	...	...	...	111
" Balulah	...	...	...	126
" Shikari-Bamian Junction	...	...	...	130
" Doab-i-Mekhi-Zarin	...	...	...	163
" Pul-i-Anaristan	...	...	...	175
" Barfak	...	...	...	180

# AFGHANISTAN

	Miles
Kabul to Tarfak Bini ... ..	216
„ Pul-i-Doshi .. ..	224
„ Kila Ghi ... ..	241
„ Pul-i-Khumri ... ..	254
„ Chin Zai ... ..	266
„ Chashma-i-Sher ... ..	271
„ Aibak ... ..	310
„ Tashqurghan (Jahan Numa Garden)	351
„ Mazar-i-Sharif ... ..	389
„ Mazar-i-Sharif (Deh* Dadi) ...	396
<b>Kabul to Khanabad and Faizabad—</b>	<b>460</b>
Kabul to Pul-i-Khumri ... ..	254
„ Baghlan ... ..	274
„ Khanabad ... ..	323
„ Gazistan ... ..	371
„ Meshad (of Kisham) ... ..	393
„ Kokchah ... ..	403
„ Pul-i-Begum ... ..	404
„ Pul-i-Toti ... ..	406
„ Pul-i-Zafar ... ..	408
„ Samadi ... ..	441
„ Faizabad ... ..	460
<b>Kabul to Maimanah—</b>	<b>607</b>
Kabul to Mazar-i-Sharif ... ..	389
Mazar-i-Sharif to Balkh	12
„ Nasratabad	40
„ Aqchah	56
„ Shibarghan	93
„ Khwajah Dokoh	101
„ Andkhui	133
„ Shirintagab	193
„ Maimanah	218

# APPENDIX I

					Miles
<b>Khanabad to Mazar-i-Sharif—</b>					<b>115</b>
Khanabad to Kunduz	...	...	...	...	14
„ Abdani 1	...	...	...	...	34
„ Abdani 2	...	..	...	...	42
„ Abdani 3	..	..	...	...	61
„ Tashqurghan	...	...	...	...	77
„ Mazar-i-Sharif	...	...	...	...	117
<b>Khanabad to Ishkamish—</b>					<b>74</b>
Khanabad to Shorab	...	...	...	...	17
„ Aqachashmah	..	...	...	...	37
„ Nahrain	...	...	...	...	48
„ Ishkamish	...	...	...	...	74

## APPENDIX II

### HEIGHT AND POPULATION OF IMPORTANT TOWNS

			Population.	Height (in feet) above sea-level.
Aibak	...	...	10,000	3,510
Andkhui	...	...	30,000	1,080
Aqchah	...	...	10,000	1,090
Bala Murghab	...	...	10,000	1,540
Bamian	...	...	8,000	8,400
Charikar	...	...	13,000	5,260
Daulatabad	...	...	15,000	1,390
Faizabad	...	...	22,000	3,500
Farah	...	...	8,500	2,460
Gardez	...	...	15,000	7,000
Ghazni	...	...	20,000	7,280
Ghorian	...	...	7,000	2,680
Girishk	...	...	8,000	2,880
Herat	...	...	85,000	3,030
Jalalabad	...	...	22,000	1,950
Kabul	..	...	1,20,000	6,000
Kalat-i-Ghilzai	...	...	7,000	5,540
Kalai-Naw	...	...	5,500	2,920
Kandahar	...	...	60,000	3,500
Khanabad	...	...	30,000	1,270
Kunduz	...	...	12,000	1,100
Kusk	...	...	10,000	3,800

## APPENDIX II

			Population.	Height (in feet) above sea level.
Maimanah ...	...	...	25,000	2,860
Matun ...	...	...	15,000	3,800
Mazar-i-Sharif ...	...	...	55,000	1,265
Mukar ...	...	...	12,000	6,975
Paghman ...	...	...	15,000	7,300
Shahjui ...	...	...	10,000	6,975
Shibarghan ...	...	...	15,000	1,300
Tashqurghan ...	...	...	20,000	1,490
Tirpul ...	...	...	8,000	2,460



**APPENDIX III**  
**A SHORT BUSINESS DIRECTORY**  
**KABUL**

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
1	Abul Ali & Abdur Zahir ...	Chamani Huzuri ...	Importers, Exporters, General Merchants
2	Abul Aziz (Shahzadah) ...	Sarai Mohd. Roqomi	Importer, Cloth Exporter, Gut
3	Abdul Aziz & Abdul Latif ...	Sarai Haqdad ...	Exporters, Sheep Skin
4	Abdul Baqi & Abdul Wahid ...	Chaharchata ...	Importers, General Merchants
5	Abdul Ghaffoor & Mohd. Rez...	Sarai Ahmad Shah ...	Importers, Second-hand Clothes
6	Abdul Hakim & Abdul Halim...	Labidarya ...	Importers, Green Tea
7	Abdul Hamid (Haji) & Abdul Aziz	Chamani Huzuri ...	Importers, General Merchants
8	Abdul Jabbar ... ..	Babai Khudi ...	Importer, Eyeglasses, Books, Stationery, Apparatus, etc.
9	Abdul Khaliq ... ..	Chaharchata ...	Importer, Copper Sheets
10	Abdul Khaliq & Abdul Wahab	Mandawi ...	Importers, Paints
11	Abdul Qadir (Haji) ...	Sarai Ahmad Shah ...	Importer, General Merchant
12	Abdur Rahman & Fazal Ahmad	Chamani Huzuri ...	Importers, Electric goods

### APPENDIX III

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
13	Afghan National Bank (Banke Millie Afghan)	Kabul .. ..	Bankers, Importers of Motors, Motor Parts, Sugar, Petrol, etc. Exporters, Karakul, Opium, Cotton
14	Abdur Raof (Haji) & Abdul Hakim	Do. .. ..	Importers, General Merchants
15	Ahmad Shah (Haji) ...	Do. ... ..	Manufacturers' Representative
16	Ala-ud-Din ... ..	Mandawi ... ..	Importer, Green Tea
17	Ali Mohd & Wali Mohd ..	Sarai Ahmad Shah ...	Importers, Cloth
18	Aman Mohd. (Haji) ...	Darwazah-Lahori ...	Exporter, Hide Importer, Leather
19	Aikona (Diwan) & Arjandas ..	Sarai Dadasher ...	Exporters, Fruits
20	Baghwan Singh & Partab Singh	Kahfroshi ... ..	Importers, Green Tea
21	Bajan Singh (Diwan) & Barut Singh	Sarai Mohd. Qaumi ..	Importers, Cloth Exporters, Dried Fruits
22	Banjamin (Jew) ... ..	Sarai Mohd. Qaumi ..	Importer, Cloth Exporter, Dried Fruits
23	Barahan Singh (Diwan) & Sahan Singh	Sarai Dada-her ..	Importers, Cloth Exporters, Dried Fruits
24	Brinji Mall & Karam Chand ...	Sarai Dadasher ..	Importers, Cloth Exporters, Fruits
25	Budhu Singh & Hari Singh ...	Sarai Zardad ..	Importers, Cloth
26	Charan Dass & Lall Chand ...	Sarai Mohd. Qaumi ...	Importers, Cloth Exporters, Fruits

# AFGHANISTAN

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
27	Dahud (Jew) ... ..	Sarai Mohd. Qaumi ...	Importer, Cloth
28	Dilbar ... ..	Bazaar Shahi ...	Importer, Provisions
29	Fazal & Co. (S.) ... ..	Deh Afghanan ...	Importers, Exporters, General Merchandise
30	Ganga Wishan & Ram Ditta ...	Sarai Dadasher ...	Importers, Cloth
31	General Trading House ...	Labidarya ...	General Merchants
32	Ghulam Ali & Mohd. Ibrahim	Sarai Zardad ...	Exporters, Hide Importers, Leather
33	Ghulam Haider ... ..	Guzari Hazrat Sahib ...	Importer, Green Tea
34	Ghulam Hassan & Ghulam Sarwar	Sarai Dadasher ...	Importers, Cloth and Tea
35	Ghulam Hassan ... ..	Sarai Haqdad ...	Exporter, Hide
36	Ghulam Nabi (Haji) & Ghulam Haider	Sarai Shor Bazaar ...	Importers, Cloth
37	Gokal Chand & Mohan Lall ...	Sarai Mohd. Qaumi ...	Importers, General Merchant
38	<b>Government Purchase House</b>	Kabul ...	Importer, Government Requirements
39	Gul Mir & Ahad Mir ... ..	Deh Afghanan ...	Importers, Cloth and Shoes
40	Gul Mohd. ... ..	Shor Bazaar ...	Importer, Cloth
41	Gurmakh Singh ... ..	Sarai Dadasher ...	Importer, Cloth

### APPENDIX III

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
42	Hashimi & Co. .. ...	Labidaiya ...	Importers, and Exporters, General Merchants
43	Habibullah & Mohd. Hassan ...	Barana ...	Importers, Cloth
44	Hassan Mohd. (Haji) & Bros. ...	Misgari ...	Importers, Copper Sheets
45	Hazrat Gul & Ahmad Gul ...	Sarai Abdul Haq ...	Exporters, Fruits Importers, Green Tea
46	Hazrat Gul ...	Sarai Mandwi ...	Exporter, Fruits
47	Hukam Singh ...	Sarai Mohd. Qaumi ...	Importer and Exporter
48	Ibrahim Folad (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Importer, Cloth
49	Imam Bux & Mohd. Ramzan ...	Sarai Chawk ...	Importers, Cloth
50	Imam-ud-Din (Haji) & Shams-ud-Din ...	Deh Afghanan ...	Importers, General Merchants
51	Jamshid ...	Sarai Mohd. Qaumi ...	Importer, Cloth
52	Karam Chand ...	Do. ..	Importer and Exporter
53	Karam Bux ...	Do. ..	Importer, Cloth
54	Khawajah Nizam-ud-Din (Haji) ...	Misgari ...	Importer, Leather Exporter, Hide
55	Lakshmi Chand & Bishan Dass ...	Sarai Zardad ...	Importers, Cloth

# AFGHANISTAN

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
56	Lall Chand & Ram Chand ..	Sarai Zardad ...	Importers, Cloth Exporters, Fruit
57	Lalu & Wazir Chand ...	Do. ..	Importers, Cloth Exporters, Fruits
58	Lutfur Rahman (Mawlawi) .	Do. ...	Importer, Cloth, Hardware, etc.
59	Maqsud (Qari) ...	Sarai Mohd. Qanuni ..	Importer, Silk
60	Masum Ahmad & Abdur Razaq	Chamani Huzni ..	Importers, Boots and Shoes
61	Mir Ahmad ...	Sarai Zardad ...	Importer, Cloth
62	Mir Ibrahim ...	Labidaryah ..	Importer, Green Tea
63	Mir Ismail ...	Do. ...	Importer, Green Tea
64	Mir Rahim (Haji) ...	Guzar Wazir ...	Importer, Green Tea
65	Mir Wazir (Haji) & Abdul Qadir	Sarai Dadashet ...	Importers, Cloth and Tea
66	Mirza Mohd. Ali ...	Jadah Andrabi ...	Importer, General Merchant
67	Mir Mohd. Hussain & Ghulam Hussain	Labidaryah ..	Importers, Green Tea
68	Mohd. Afzal (Haji) & Sons ...	Sarai Zardad ...	Exporters
69	Mohd. Ali, Mohd. Umar & Bros.	Sarai Haqqad ...	General Merchants
70	Mohd. Ali, Ghulam Ali & Bros.	Sarai Ahmad Shah ...	Importers, General Merchants
71	Mohd. Ashur (S.) ...	Sarai Zardad ...	Importer, Cloth
72	Mohd. Aslam (Haji) & Sikandar Khan	Chaharchata ...	Importers, Cloth

# APPENDIX III

Serial No.	Name.	Address	Particulars.
73	Mohd. Ayub (Haji) & Mohd. Qayum	Misgar	Copper Sheets
74	Mohd. Azim	Chamani Huzuri	Importer, Leather
75	Mohd. Musa	Deh Afghan	Importer, General Merchant
76	Mohd. Nadir & Mohd. Qadir	Deh Kipal	Importers, General Merchants
77	Mohd. Rafiq (Haji) & Mohd. Sharif (Haji)	Sarai Payani Chawk	Importers, Green Tea and Cloth
78	Mohd. Said & Ghulam Qadir	Sarai Dadasher	Importers, Green Tea
79	Mohd. Sarwar & Mohd. Tahir	Do.	Importers, Green Tea
80	Mohd. Sharif & Mohd. Aslam	Sarai Zardad	Importers, Glasses
81	Mohd. Umar & Mohd. Zaman	Chamani Huzuri	General Merchants
82	Mohd. Yakub	Sarai Ahmad Shah	General Merchant
83	Moman Khan	Sarai Mandawi	Importer, Green Tea
84	Nand Lall & Manak Chand	Sarai Zardad	Importers, Cloth Exporters, Fruits
85	Nand Lall & Lall Chand	Sarai Mohd. Qummi	Importers, Silk
86	Naranjan Dass	Sarai Zardad	Importer, Cloth
87	Nazar Mohd.	Mandawi	Importer, Green Tea
88	Ram Chand & Faqir Chand	Sarai Zardad	General Merchant
89	Rustumji	Deh Afghanan	Importer, General Merchant

# AFGHANISTAN

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
90	Sahibjan .. ...	Sarai Haqdad ...	Importer, Cloth
91	Shankir Dass & Ram Chand ..	Labidaryah ..	Importers, General Merchants
92	Shari Chand & Uttam Chand ...	Sarai Mohd. Qaumi ...	Importers, Cloth
93	Sher Ahmad, Sher Mohd. & Bros.	Chahachata ...	Importers, Cloth
94	Sherdil Khan ... ..	Deh Afghanan ...	Importer, General Merchant
95	Shirkat-i-Karakuli (Karakuli Co.)	Khiyaban ...	Exporters, Karakuli Sheep Skin
96	Shirkat-i-Mewah (Fruit Co.)	Andarabi ...	Exporters, Fruits
97	Shirkat-i-Petrol, Qand (Petrol & Sugar Co.)	Chamani Huzuri ...	Importers, Petrol and Sugar
98	Sirandaz Khan ... ..	Mandawi ...	Importer, Green Tea
99	Sports and Games ..	Chamani Huzuri ...	Importers, Sports goods, Arms and ammunition, radios, motor cycles, cycles, sewing machines, etc.
100	Uttam Chand ... ..	Sarai Dadashet ...	Importer and Exporter

## KANDAHAR

1	Abdul Aziz (Haji) ...	Kandahar ...	Importer, General Merchant
2	Abdul Karim (Haji) & Sher Mohd.	Do. ...	Importers, General Merchants

# APPENDIX III

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
3	Abdul Khaliq (Haji) & Abdul Qayum	Kandahar	Importers, General Merchants
4	Abdul Qadir	Do.	Importer, General Merchant
5	Abdul Raoof	Do.	Do.
6	Abdul Salam (Haji)	Do.	Do.
7	Abdul Shakoor (Haji)	Do.	Do.
8	Ahmad Jan (Haji)	Do.	Do.
9	Asa Nand (Diwan)	Do.	Do.
10	Deram & Chaman Lall	Do.	Importers, General Merchants
11	Dwarka Singh	Do.	Importer, General Merchant
12	Ghulam Dastagir	Do.	Exporter, Fruits
13	Ghulam Mohd. (Haji)	Do.	Importer and Exporter
14	Haji Jamal-ud-Din	Do.	Do.
15	Habibullah (Haji)	Do.	Importer, General Merchant
16	Khan Chand & Khem Chand	Do.	Importers, General Merchants
17	Lachman (Diwan)	Do.	Importer, General Merchant
18	Lako (Diwan) & Asho	Do.	Importers
19	Mohd. Anwar (Haji)	Do.	Exporter, Fruits
20	Mohd. Din (Haji)	Do.	Importer, General Merchant



# AFGHANISTAN

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
21	Mihr Dil Khan (Haji) ...	Kandahar ...	Importer and Exporter, General Merchant
22	Mohd. Jan (Haji) & Siraj-ud-Din	Do. ...	Importers, General Merchants
23	Mohd. Aslam (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Importer and Exporter
24	Mohd. Hussan (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
25	Mohd. Qasim ...	Do. ...	Exporter, Fruits
26	Mohd. Rahim (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Importer and Exporter, General Merchant
27	Mohd. Sarwar (Haji) & Ghulam Qadir	Do. ...	Importers, General Merchants
28	Moti (Diwan) ...	Do. ...	Importer, General Marchant
29	Nand Lall (Diwan) ...	Do. ...	Importer and Exporter
30	Mano Singh & Ram Singh ...	Do. ...	Importers and Exporters, General Merchants
31	Narain Dass (Diwan) ...	Do. ...	Importer, General Merchant
32	Nur Mohd. (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
33	Saleh Mohd. ...	Do. ...	Do.
34	Sarwar Jan & Mohd. Yusif ...	Do. ...	Importers and Exporters, General Merchants *

### APPENDIX III

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
35	Sarwar Jan (Haji) ...	Kandahar ...	Importer and Exporter, General Merchant
36	<b>Shirkat-i-Pashtoon (Pashtoon Co.)</b>	Do. ...	Exporters, Fint.
37	<b>Shirkat-i-Watan (Watan Co.)</b>	Do. ...	Exporters, Wool
38	Shiva (Diwan) ...	Do. ..	Importer, General Merchant
39	Sham Dass (Diwan) ...	Do. ...	Do.

### HERAT

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
1	Abdul Khaliq Khan ...	Herat ...	Importer, General Merchant
2	Abdullah Khan ...	Do. ...	Exporter and Importer
3	Abdul Qadus (Sayid) ...	Do. ...	Do.
4	Abdur Rahim (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
5	Abdur Rahman ...	Do. ...	Do.
6	Abdul Wahab ...	Do. ...	Do.
7	Aga Mohd. Hussain ...	Do. ...	Do.
8	Azim Khan (H. S.) ...	Do. ...	Do.
9	Din Mohd. (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
10	Faiz Mohd. (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
11	Fazal Haq Khan (S.) ...	Do. ...	Importer, General Merchant.
12	Ghulam Ali (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.

# AFGHANISTAN

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars,
13	Ghulam Haider (Mukhtarzadah)	Herat ...	Importer, General Merchant
14	Ghulam Haider (Shirkat-i-Haqiqat)	Do. ...	Importers and Exporters
15	Ghulam Hassan (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Importer and Exporter
16	Ghulam Mohd. (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
17	Ghulam Nabi (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
18	Ghulam Mohi-ud-Din ...	Do. ...	Do.
19	Habibullah Khan (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
20	Hafizullah Khan ...	Do. ...	Do.
21	Maula Dad Khan ...	Do. ...	Do.
22	Mirza Dost Mohd. ...	Do. ...	Importer
23	Mohd. Alam Khan ...	Do. ...	Exporter and Importer
24	Mohd. Anwar Khan (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
25	Mohd. Baqi Khan ...	Do. ...	Exporter
26	Mohd. Hadi Khan ...	Do. ...	Exporter and Importer
27	Mohd. Haider Khan ...	Do. ...	Do.
28	Mohd. Hassan Khan (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.
29	Mohd. Ibrahim Khan (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Importer
30	Mohd. Karim Khan ...	Do. ...	Importer and Exporter
31	Mohd. Nabi Khan ...	Do. ...	Importer
32	Mohd. Shafi Khan ...	Do. ...	Importer and Exporter
33	Mohd. Sharif Khan (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Do.

### APPENDIX III

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
34	Mohd. Tahir (S.) ..	Herat ...	Exporter
35	Mohd. Yaqub ...	Do. ...	Importer
36	Nek Mohd. Khan ...	Do. ...	Do.
37	Rahim Dad Khan ..	Do. ..	Do.
38	Saleh Mohd. (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Importer and Exporter
39	<b>Shirkat-i-Itahadiya (Union Co.)</b>	Do. ...	Importers and Exporters
40	Tawakal Co. (Proprietor H. Mohd. Sarwar Khan)	Do. ...	Do.

### MAZAR-I-SHARIF

1	Ghulam Shah Khan ...	Mazar-i-Sharif	Importer, General Exporter, Fox Skin
2	Ilyas-ud-Din Khan (Haji) ..	Do. ...	Do.
3	Mirza Fateh Mohd. ...	Do. ...	Do.
4	Mirza Ghulam Qadir ...	Do. ...	Do.
5	Moqim Bhai ...	Do. ...	Do.
6	Sahab-ud-Din (Haji) ...	Do. ...	Importer, Hardware Exporter, Skin and Wool
7	Safar Mohd. Khan ...	Do. ...	Do.
8	Said Ahmad Khan ...	Do. ...	Do.
9	Salim Shah Khan ...	Do. ...	Do.
10	<b>Shirkat-i-Itahadiyai Shimali (The Northern Union Co.)</b>	Do. ...	Importers, Cloth, Sugar Exporters
11	Sofi Khudai Nazar ...	Do. ...	Importer and Exporter

# AFGHANISTAN

## JALALABAD

Serial No.	Name.	Address.	Particulars.
1	Dalip Singh	Jalalabad	Importer, General Merchant
2	Dass Mal	Do.	Exporter and Importer
3	Fateh Mohd. Khan (Haji)	Do.	Do.
4	Jodh Singh and Uttam Singh	Do.	Exporters and Importers
5	Kan Singh	Do.	Exporter and Importer
6	Sardah Singh	Do.	Do.

## MAIMANAH

Mohd. Murad Bhai	Maimanah	Exporter and Exporter
------------------	----------	-----------------------

## HAZNI

1	Adam Khan Kharoti	Ghazni	Importer, Cloth Exporter, Fruits, Skin, etc.
2	Amir Chand and Duni Chand	Do.	Do.
3	Chucha (Diwan)	Do.	Do.
4	Ghaffar Miti	Do.	Do.

## APPENDIX IV

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

<b>Abbott (Capt. J.)</b> —Narrative of a Journey from Herat to Khiva, Moscow and St. Petersburg ... ..	London	1870
<b>—(Maj.-Gen. A.)</b> —The Afghan War, 1838—42. 2 Vols....	London	1843
<b>Adye (Col. J.)</b> —Sistana: A Mountain Campaign on the Borders of Afghanistan ... ..	London	1867
<b>Afghanistan</b> —The Second Afghan War, 1878—80. Official Account. (Abridged) ... ..	London	...
<b>Ahmad (J. D.), &amp; A. Aziz</b> —Afghanistan: A Brief Survey ...	Kabul	1934
<b>Aitchinson</b> —The Zoology of the Afghan Delimitation Commission ... ..	...	1881
<b>—</b> The Botany of the Afghan Delimitation Commission ...	Bengal	1887
<b>—</b> Notes to Assist in a Further Knowledge of the Products of W. Afghanistan and N. E. Persia ... ..	...	...
<b>Ali (Mohammed)</b> —Progressive Afghanistan ... ..	Lahore	1933
<b>Allen (I. N.)</b> —Diary of a March through Sindh and Afghanistan ... ..	London	1843
<b>Andrew</b> —India and Her Neighbours		
<b>—</b> Our Scientific Frontier (Afghanistan). Published with the Bolan and Khyber Railways ... ..	...	1880
<b>Anglo-Afghan Trade Convention</b> —Treaty Series No. 2 ...	...	1923
<b>Anon.</b> —The Pushtu Language. Asiatic Quarterly Review. Vol. VIII ... ..	...	1894
<b>Ashe</b> —Personal Records of the Kunlhar Campaign by Officers engaged therein ... ..	...	...
<b>Atkinson (J.)</b> —Sketches in Afghanistan .. ...	London	1842
<b>Bachhofer (Luwig)</b> —Zur Plastik von Hadda ... ..	...	1931
<b>Balfour (Lady Betty)</b> —Lord Lytton's Indian Administration ... ..	...	1899
<b>Barthoux (Jules)</b> —Bagh-gai, Revenue des Arts Asiatique ...	...	1928
<b>—</b> Les Fouilles de Hadda ... ..	Paris et Bruxelles	1933

# AFGHANISTAN

<b>Barr (Lieut. W.)</b> —Journal of a March from Delhi to Peshawar and from thence to Cabul ... ..	London	1844
<b>—(William)</b> —Kabul and the Punjab ... ..	London	1844
<b>Bellow (H. W.)</b> —From the Indus to the Tigris ... ..	London	1874
<b>—</b> Journal of a Political Mission to Afghanistan in 1857, under Major Lumsden ... ..	London	1862
<b>—</b> Afghanistan and the Afghans ... ..	London	1879
<b>—</b> The Races of Afghanistan ... ..	Calcutta	1880
<b>—</b> A Dictionary of the Pukhto ... ..	London	1867
<b>—</b> A Grammar of the Pukhto .. ...	London	1867
<b>—</b> A General Report on the Yusufzais ... ..	...	1864
<b>Biddulph (Major)</b> —The Tribes of the Hindu Koosh : ... ..	Calcutta	1880
<b>—(C. E.)</b> —Afghan Poetry of the 17th Century, with translation ... ..	London	1890
<b>Blumhart (J. F.)</b> —Catalogues of the Hindi, Panjabi, Sindhi and Pushtu Printed Books in the Library of the British Museum ... ..	London	1893
<b>Bodard</b> —Ma Mission en Afghanistan ... ..	Paris	...
<b>Bogdanov (L.)</b> —The Afghan Weights and Measures ... ..	London	1928
<b>Bonvalot</b> —Through the Heart of Asia. From the French, by C. B. Pitman, 2 Vols. ... ..	...	1889
<b>Börnstein-Bosta (Dr. F.)</b> —Manda na Baschi. Reisen und Erlebnisse eines deutschen Arztes in Afghanistan ... ..	Berlin	1925
<b>Boukhary</b> —Histoire l'asie Centrale, translated into French by Charles Schefer, Ernest, Leroux ... ..	Paris	1876
<b>Boulger (Demetrius C.)</b> —Central Asian Questions ... ..	...	1885
<b>Bruce</b> —The Forward Policy and its Results, or 35 Years work among the Tribes on our N. W. Frontier of India ... ..	...	1900
<b>Brückl (Dr. Karl)</b> —Über die Geologie von Badakhshan und Kataghan.(Afghanistan) ... ..	...	1935
<b>Burnes (Lt. Col. Sir A.)</b> —Travels into Bukhara. Being the account of a journey from India to Cabool and Persia ... ..	London	1834
<b>—</b> Cabool; A Personal Narrative of a Journey to, and a Residence in that City ... ..	London	1842
<b>Byron (Robert)</b> —The Road to Osiana ... ..	...	...
<b>Casartelli (I. C.)</b> —Les Afghans et leur langues... ..	Paris	1882

# APPENDIX IV

<b>Cholet</b> —Excursion en Turkistan et sur la Frontiere Russo-Afghan	...	...	...	...	1889
<b>Cipolla (Arnaldo)</b> —Asia Centrale Sovietica Contro India	...	Milano	...	...	1935
<b>Colquhoun (Major J. A. S.)</b> —With the Kurruin Field Force, 1878-79	...	...	...	London	1881
<b>Confidential Publication</b> —Military Operations in Afghanistan	...	...	...	...	1880
<b>Conolly (A.)</b> —Journey to the North of India	...	...	...	...	1838
<b>Cox</b> —Notes on Pashto Grammar	...	...	...	London	1911
<b>Crane</b> —The Ninth Lancers in Afghanistan, 1879-80	...	...	...	...	...
<b>Cunningham</b> —Coins of the Indo-Scythians, Sakas and Kushans	...	...	...	...	1882—92
—Coins of Alexander's Successors in the East	...	...	...	...	...
<b>Curzon (Hon. G. N.)</b> —Russia in Central Asia in 1889, and the Anglo-Russian Question	...	...	...	...	1889
<b>Dacosta (J.)</b> —A Scientific Frontier, or the Danger of a Russian Invasion of India	...	...	...	...	1891
<b>D. B.</b> —Our Afghan Policy and the Occupation of Kandahar	...	...	...	...	1880
<b>Dahl</b> —Die Rolle Afghanistans in der Weltpolitik. In: Zeitschrift für Politik, Bd. XIV	...	...	...	...	1925
<b>Darmestere (J.)</b> —Chants populaires des Afghans	...	Paris	...	...	1880-90
<b>Datta (Bhupendranath)</b> —Eine Untersuchung der Rassenelemente in Belutschistan, Afghanistan und den Nachbarländern des Hindukusch, Diss	...	...	Hamburg	...	1924
<b>Dollot (René)</b> —L'œuvre archéologique de la France en Afghanistan. Affaires étrangères	...	...	...	Nov.	1937
—Coup d'œil sur l'Afghanistan. Affaires étrangères	...	...	...	Mars	1937
—Afghanistan	...	...	Paris	...	1938
<b>Dom</b> —History of the Afghans, translated from the Persian of Neamatullah, 1829-36	...	...	...	...	...
<b>Dorn (B.)</b> —History of the Afghans	...	...	London	...	1829
<b>Dorn (B.)</b> —Über das Pashtu oder die Sprache der Afghanen	...	...	St. Petersburg	...	1842
—Nachträge zur Grammatik der Afghanischen Sprache	...	...	„	...	1845
—Chrestomathy of the Pashtu or Afghan Language	...	...	„	...	1847



# AFGHANISTAN

<b>Duke (Joshna)</b> —Recollections of the Kabul Campaign, 1879-1880	...	...	...	...	London	1883
<b>Durrand (Maj. General Sir Henry Marion)</b> —Life of—By H. M. Durrand. 2 Vols	...	...	...	...	...	1883
—The First Afghan War	...	...	...	...	London	1879
<b>Eastwick</b> —Lord Lytton and the Afghan War	...	...	...	...	...	1879
<b>Edwardes</b> —Russian Projects against India	...	...	...	...	...	1885
<b>Edwardes (Maj. H. B.)</b> —A Year on the Punjab Frontier in 1848-49	...	...	...	...	...	1851
<b>Elphinstone (Hon. Mountstuart)</b> —An Account of the King- dom of Cabool	...	...	...	...	London	1815
—New and Revised Edition of the same, 2 Vols.	...	...	...	...	London	1839
<b>England and Russia Face to Face</b> , Travels with the Afghan Boundary Commission	...	...	...	...	...	1887
<b>Epitome of Correspondence</b> regarding our relations with Afghanistan and Herat	...	...	...	...	...	1863
<b>Ewald</b> —Über das Afghanischen oder Puschtu	...	...	...	...	...	1839
<b>Eyre (Lieut. V.)</b> —The Military Operations at Kabul, which ended in the retreat and destruction of the British army, Jan, 1842	...	...	...	...	London	1843
—Journal of an Afghan Prisoner	...	...	...	...	London	1743
<b>Fane</b> —Five years in India. 2 Nols	...	...	...	...	London	1842
<b>Featherstone (B. K.)</b> —Through the Heart of Afghanistan, translated from German "Quer durch Afghanistan nach India"	...	...	...	...	London	1928
<b>Ferrier (J. P.)</b> —Caravan Journey and Wanders in Persia, Afghanistan, Turkistan and Beloochistan	...	...	...	...	London	1857
—History of the Afghans	...	...	...	...	London	1858
<b>Field</b> —With the Afghans	...	...	...	...	N. D.	
<b>Fisher</b> —Afghanistan and the Central Asian Question	...	...	...	...	...	1878
<b>Forbes</b> —The Afghan Wars (1839-42 and 1878-80)	...	...	...	...	London	1892
<b>Forbes (Rosita)</b> —Conflict, Angora and Afghanistan	...	...	...	...	Great Britain	1931
<b>Forschungsgemeinschaft—(Deutsche),</b> Entomologische Sammelergebnisse der Deutschen Hindukusch—Ex- pedition 1935 der Deutschen Forschungsgemeinschaft.						

# APPENDIX IV

Arbeiten über morphologische und taxonomische Entomologie aus Berlin—Dahlem, 3, S, 173-213	Berlin-Dahlem	1936
<b>Forster (G.)</b> —A Journey from Bengal to England. 2 Vols....	...	1808
<b>Foucher (Alfred)</b> —Sur la frontiere Indo-Afghan	Pairs	1901
—Notice archéologique de la vallée de Bamiyan. Journal-Asiatique	...	1923
—De Kabul á Bactres, La Géographie	...	...
—Notes sur les antiquités bouddhiques de Haïbk, Journal Asiatique	...	1924
—Notes sur l'itinéraire de Hiuan-tsang en Afghanistan	Paris	1925
—Rapports sur les premiers recherches de la Délégation archéologique française en Afghanistan.		
<b>From Brigand to King</b> —(Autobiography of Amir Habibullah) Published by Sampson Low	London	1938
<b>Fraser</b> —Historical and Descriptive Accounts of Persia, Afghanistan and Baloochistan	...	1834
<b>Furon (Raymond)</b> —L'Afghanistan : Géographie, Historie Ethnographie, Voyages	Paris	1926
—L'Hindou-Kouch et le Kaboulistan	Paris	1927
—Les ressources minières de l'Afghanistan	...	1924
—Observation géologiques sur la vallée Kaboul	...	1925
—Les Séisms de la région de Kabul	...	1925
<b>Gasteiger</b> —From Tehran to Baluchistan	...	1884
<b>Geiger (Garrickij A. A.)</b> —Materialien zur Frage über die Landwirtschaft Afghanistan	Tashkend	1927
<b>Gibertson (G. W.)</b> —First Pakhto Book	Benares	1901
<b>Gilberton</b> —The Pakhto Idioms	...	1931
<b>Gillham (Thornsett)</b> —Kohat, Kurram and Khost, or the Experience and Adventure in the late Afghan War	...	1884
<b>Gionnini (A.)</b> —La Costituzione Afghana. ' Oriente Moderno.' No. 6	...	1931
<b>Gleig (Rev. G. R.)</b> —Sale's Brigade in Afghanistan	...	...
<b>Gobineau (Graf Arthur)</b> —Asiatische Novellen. Übers v. Ludw. Schemann	Leipzig	...

# AFGHANISTAN

- Godard (Andre)**—Exposition de récentes découvertes et de récent travaux archéologiques en Afghanistan ... Paris 1925
- Godard (A.), Godard (Y.), Hackin (J.)**—Les Antiquités bouddhiques de Bamiyan ... Paris et Bruxelles 1928
- Ghazni ; et Flury, S. Le décor épigraphique des monuments de Ghazna ... Paris 1925
- Goshall (U. N.)**—Ancient Indian Culture in Afghanistan ... Calcutta 1928
- Gray (John Alfred)**—My Residence at the Court of the Amir ... London 1901
- Greenwood (Lieut.)**—Campaigns in Afghanistan under General Pollock ... London 1858
- Günther, (Hans. F. K.)**—Die Nordisché Rasse bei den Indogermanen Asiens. Ein Beitrag zur Frage der Urheimet der Indogermanen ... München 1934
- Hackin (Joseph)**—Sculptures Gréco-bouddhiques du Kapisa Paris 1925-26
- Les fouilles de la Délégation archéologique française en Afghanistan á Hadda ... 1928
- The Colossal Buddhas at Bamiyan, their influence on Buddhist sculpture, Eastern Art. Vol. I, No. 2 ... 1928
- L'art Bouddhique de Bamiyan ... 1928
- Repartition des monnaies anciennes en Afghanistan. Journal Asiatique ... Paris, Avril-juin 1935
- Afghanistan ... Revue de Paris, Avril 1934
- L'Art Bouddhique de la Bactriane, with its Persian translation by M. Ahmad Ali Kohzad. Literary Society Kabul 1937
- Archeologie en Afghanistan ... Revue de Paris, 15 juin 1938
- Haig (W.)**—Turks and Afghans ... New York 1928
- Hamid Hussain (S.)**—Travels of the King of Afghanistan ... Delhi 1926
- Hamilton (A.)**—Afghanistan ... 1906
- Hanna (Col. H. B.)**—The Second Afghan War—  
Vol. I ... Westminster 1899  
Vol. II ... Westminster 1904

# APPENDIX IV

<b>Harris (C.)</b> —The Pushto Grammar	...	...	London	1844
<b>Hart (Capt. L. W.)</b> —22nd Bombay Infantry 1839—42	...			
<b>Havelock (Capt. H.)</b> —Narrative of the War in Afghanistan in 1838-39, 2 Vols.	...	...		1840
<b>Hayden (H. H.)</b> —Notes on some monuments in Afghanistan	Calcutta			1910
— The Geology of Northern Afghanistan	...	...		1911
<b>Heden (S.)</b> —Overland to India	...	...	London	1910
<b>Henry (V.)</b> —Etudes Afghanes	...	...	Paris	1882
<b>Hentig (W. O. von)</b> —Meine Diplomatenfahrt ins verschlossenenland	...	...	Potsdam	1918
<b>Heras (Prof. Rev. Henry)</b> —The Jesuits in Afghanistan. The New Review	...	...	February	1935
— The Spread of Buddhism in Afghanistan	...	...	January	1938
— The Origin of the so-called Greco-Buddhist Sculpture of Gandahara	...	...		
<b>Herbardt</b> —Über nutzbare Lagerstätten in Afghanistan. — In : Zeitschrift für praktische Geologie	...	...	Halle	1926
<b>Herbardt (O.)</b> —Eine Reise nach Dar-i-Nur im Nordosten Afghanistans. "Petermanns Mitteilungen"	...			1926
— Reise beobachtungen am Nordabhang des Safi Kuh— Gebirges in Ostafghanistan 'P. M.' H 5/6	...	...		1930
— Geographisch-Geologisches aus dem Hindukuschrand- gebiet in Afghanistan 'P. M.' H. 11/12	...	...		1931
<b>Herrlich (Dr. Albrecht)</b> —Land des Lichtes. Kundfahrt zu unbekannten Völkern im Hindukusch	...		München	1937
<b>Hesse (F.)</b> —Zur Aussenpolitik Afghanistans unter Mohammed Nadir Schah, Afghan In: "Europäische Gespräche." Heft 12	...	...	Barlin	1930
<b>Heusman (H.)</b> —The Afghan War of 1879-80	...	...	London	1881
<b>Holditch (Col. Sir T.)</b> —The Gates of India	...	...	London	1910
— Indian Borderland	...	...	London	1901
<b>Hopkins (D.)</b> —The Danger of British India, 2nd Edition	Lahore			1872
<b>Hough (Major)</b> —Campaign in Afghanistan	...	...	London	1841
<b>Hough</b> —Narrative of the March and Operations of the Army of the Indus in the Expedition into Afghanistan, 1838-39, with a History of the Durranee Empire	...	...		1840
<b>Houghes (T. P.)</b> —Kalid-i-Afghani	...	...	Lahore	1872

# AFGHANISTAN

— Second Edition	...	...	...	1893
— Ganj-i-Pakhto or Pakhto Treasury	...	...	London	1882
<b>Imperial Gazetteer of India</b> —Afghanistan and Nepal	...	...	...	1908
<b>Iven (H. E.)</b> —Das Klima von Kabul, Diss	...	...	Halle	1933
<b>Jaworskij (J. L.)</b> —Reise der Russischen Gesandtschaft in Afghanistan u. Bukhara in den Jahren	...	...	...	1878-79
<b>Katrak (Sorab K. H.)</b> —Through Amanullah's Afghanistan	...	...	Karachi	1929
<b>Kaye (J. W.)</b> —History of the War in Afghanistan— 2 Vols.	...	...	London	1851
—Another copy. 4th Edition, in 3 Vols.	...	...	...	1878
<b>Kennedy (R. H.)</b> —Narrative of the Campaign of the Army of the Indus, in Sind and Kabul in 1838-39 (2 Vols.)	...	...	...	1840
<b>Klaproth (J.)</b> —Sur la langue des Afghans	...	...	Paris	1828
<b>L'Afghanistan Nouveau</b>	...	...	Cosmo Press, Paris	1924
<b>Lall (Mohan)</b> —Life of Amir Dost Mohammed Khan	...	...	London	1846
<b>Lawrence</b> —Reminiscences of Forty Three Years in India	...	...	London	1874
<b>Leech (Lieut. R.)</b> —Vocabularies of seven languages spoken in the country west of the Indus, with the remarks on the origin of the Afghans	...	...	Bombay	1838
<b>Leitner (G. W.)</b> —Dardistan in 1895	...	...	...	1895
<b>Le Messurier</b> —Kandahar in 1879	...	...	...	1881
<b>Leszczynski (G. L.)</b> —Schul-und Pressewesen in Afghanistan In : Der Neue Orient Heft 3/4	...	...	Berlin	1925-26
—Die Landeseinteilung Afghanistans. In : Der Neue Orient	...	...	Berlin	1929
<b>Levi (Sylvain)</b> —Note sur des manuscrits sanscrits provenant de Bamiyan et de Gilgit. Journal Asiatique	...	...	...	1932
<b>Levi</b> —A Grammar of Pashtoo, or Afghan Language	...	...	...	1839
<b>Linguistic Study of India.</b> Vol. X	...	...	Calcutta	1921
<b>Locoste (Major de Bouillame de)</b> —Around Afghanistan, translated by J. G. Anderson	...	...	London	1909
<b>Loewenthal (I.)</b> —Is Pushto a Semitic Language. Journal of the Asiatic Society, Bengal	...	...	...	1860
<b>Lorimer (Major D. L. R.)</b> —Pashto	...	...	Oxford	1915
<b>Low (C. R.)</b> —The Afghan War (1838--42)	...	...	London	1879
<b>Lumsden</b> —The Mission to Kandahar	...	...	...	1860
<b>Lyons</b> —Afghanistan, the Buffer State	...	...	...	...

# APPENDIX IV

<b>Macksy (Ernest)</b> —La Civilisation de L'Indus	Payot, Paris	1936
<b>MacGregor (Maj.-Gen. Sir C. M.)</b> —Wanderings in Baluchistan .. .. .	...	1882
— Narrative of a Journey through the Province of Khorassan and on the N. W. Frontier of Afghanistan ...	...	1879
<b>Macgregor</b> —Gazetteer of Afghanistan ...	...	1871
<b>Mackenzie</b> —The Expenses of the Afghan War ...	London	...
<b>Mackenzie (Charles Finch)</b> —Zeila (The Fair Maid of Kabul). A Tale of the Afghan insurrection and massacre of the British Troops in the Kabul passes ...	London	1849
<b>MacMahon (A. H.)</b> —The Southern Borderland of Afghanistan ...	London	1897
<b>MacMahon and H. H. Hudleston</b> —Fossils from The Hindu Kooch ...	...	1902
<b>Macmunn (Sir G. M.)</b> —From Darius to Amanullah ...	London	1929
<b>Malleson</b> —History of Afghanistan, 2nd Edition ...	London	1879
— Herat, the Granary and Garden of Central Asia ...	...	1880
<b>Maitland</b> —Gazetteer of India ...	...	1883
<b>Markowski (B.)</b> —Kultur des Kabulge biets ...	Leipzig	1932
<b>Martin (Franke A.)</b> —Under the Absolute Amir ...	London	1907
<b>Marvin</b> —The Russians at Merv and Herat and their Power of Invading India ...	...	1883
<b>Masson (C.)</b> —Narrative of various Journeys in Baluchistan, Afghanistan, etc. ...	...	1844
<b>Masson</b> —Travels in Afghanistan ...	...	1844
<b>Maurice (Fouchet)</b> —Notes sur L'Afghanistan ..	Paris	1931
<b>Military Operations in Afghanistan</b> ...	Calcutta	1843
<b>Mitford</b> —The Chronicles of a Traveller: or, A History of the Afghan Wars with Persia ...	London	1840
— To Kabul with Cavalry Brigade ...	...	1881
<b>Mohammad Ismail Khan</b> —Guide to Pukhto ...	Abbottabad	1894
— Khazan-i-Afghani with English Translation ...	Lahore	1898
<b>Mohen Lall</b> —Travels in the Punjab, Afghanistan, etc. ...	...	1846
<b>Mohn (P.)</b> —Resa till Afghanistan ...	Stockholm	1930
<b>Morgen (J. De)</b> —Manuel de Numismatique Orientale Fascicule II ...	Paris	1924

# AFGHANISTAN

<b>Morgenstierne (G.)</b> —Report of a Linguistic Mission to Afghanistan ... ..	Oslo	1926
— Indo-Iranian Frontier Languages, Vol. I ... ..	Oslo	1929
<b>Morrish (C.)</b> —Afghanistan in the Melting Pot. ... ..	Lahore	1930
<b>Muller (Fr.)</b> —Über die Sprache der avghanen (Pakhto) ... ..		1863
<b>Neill</b> —Recollection of four years service in the East, with H. M. Frontier Regiment ... ..		1846
<b>Niedermayer (O. von) und Diez Ernst</b> —Afghanistan ... ..	Leipzig	1924
<b>Niedermayer</b> —L'Afghanistan Neveau ... ..	Paris	1920
<b>Niedermayer (Ritter Oskar von)</b> —Unter der Glutsonne Irans ... ..	Dachan München	1926
<b>Nott</b> —Nott's Brigade in Afghanistan ... ..	Bombay	1880
<b>Noyce (F.)</b> —England, India and Afghanistan ... ..	London	1902
<b>Oliver (E. E.)</b> —Across the Border, or Pathan and Biloch ... ..	London	1890
<b>Paget</b> —Record of Expedition against the N. W. Frontier Tribes ... ..		1874
<b>Parliamentary Papers, Afghanistan</b> ... ..		1873-1899
<b>Pernot (M.)</b> —Afghanistan, "L'inquietude de L'Orient" ... ..		1927
<b>Pecorella (C. M.)</b> —Farda ... ..	Roma	1930
<b>Pennel (P. L.)</b> —Among the Wild Tribes of the Afghan Frontier ... ..	London	1911
<b>Pennell (A. M.)</b> —Pennel of the Afghan Frontier ... ..	London	1914
<b>Pernot (Maurice)</b> —En Asie Musulmane ... ..	Paris	1927
<b>Perrin (N.)</b> —L'Afghanistan ... ..	Paris	1842
<b>Pires (E. A.) M. A.</b> —The Rise of Barakzais in Afghanistan (Indian Historical Research Institute manuscript, St. Xavier's College, Bombay) ... ..		
<b>Platen (K. G. von)</b> —Meine Forschungs reise nach Kafiristan Kol nische Zeiting ... ..	Feb.-March	1936
<b>Plowden (Maj. T. C.)</b> —Idiomatic Colloquial Sentences, English-Pashto ... ..	Lahore	1875
— Translation of Kalid-i-Afghani ... ..	Lahore	1893
— Translation of Ganj-i-Pakhto. A Grammar and Syntax of Pakhto ... ..	Lahore	1893
<b>Plunkett (Capt. G. T.)</b> —Conversation Manual in English, Hindustani, Persian and Pashto ... ..	London	1893

# APPENDIX IV

<b>Popowski (J.)</b> —The Rival Powers in Central Asia (Translated from Germany) ... ..	Westminster	1893
<b>Princep</b> —Note on the Historical Results deducible from Recent Discoveries in Afghanistan ... ..		1844
<b>Punjab Government Press</b> —Records of Ludhiana Agency	Lahore	1911
<b>Rattray</b> —The Costumes of the Various Tribes, Portraits of Ladies of Rank, celebrated Chiefs and Princes, etc. ... ..		1848
<b>Raverty (H. G.)</b> —Selection from the Poetry of the Afghans	London	1862
— A Dictionary of Pashto and English ... ..	London	1860
— The Gulshan-i-Roh ... ..	London	1860
— A Grammar of Pashto ... ..	London	1867
— Some Remarks on the Origin of the Afghan people and dialect. Bengal Asiatic, Vol. XXIII ... ..		1854
— The Pashto Manual ... ..	London	1890
<b>Ravo (J. S.)</b> —King Amanullah ... ..	Madras	1929
<b>Rawlinson</b> —England and Russia in the East ... ..		1875
<b>Rawlinson (Sir M. G.)</b> —Monograph on the Oxus ... ..		1872
<b>Reis (S. A.)</b> —The Travels and Adventures of the Turkish Admiral Ali Reis in India, Afghanistan, etc. ... ..		1880
<b>Reisner (L.)</b> —Afghanistan ... ..	Moscow	1925
<b>Report on the Air Operations in Afghanistan between December 12 and February 25, 1929</b> ... ..	London	1929
<b>Rickmer Rickmers</b> —The Duab of Turkistan ... ..	Cambridge	1913
<b>Roberts</b> —Forty one Years in India ... ..		1898
<b>Robertson (C. G.)</b> —Kurum, Kabul, Kandahar ... ..		1881
<b>Robertson (Sir G. S.)</b> —Chitral : the story of a Minor Siege ... ..		1898
<b>Robertson</b> —The Kafirs of the Hindu-Kush ... ..		1890
<b>Rodenburgh</b> —Afghanistan and the Anglo-Russian Dispute ... ..		1885
<b>Roos-Keppel (Capt. G.)</b> —A Manual of Pushto ... ..	London	1901
<b>Roskoschny (H.)</b> —Afghanistan v. s. Nachbarländer ... ..		
<b>Ross (E. D.)</b> —The Heart of Central Asia ... ..		
<b>Rybitschka</b> —Im gottgegebenen Afghanistan als Gäste des Emirs ... ..		1927
<b>Sale (Lady)</b> —A Journal of the Disaster in Afghanistan, 1841-42 ... ..	London	1843
<b>Sale</b> —The Defence of Jalalabad ... ..		



# AFGHANISTAN

<b>Scheibe (Dr. A.)</b> —Deutsche im Hindukusch. Bericht der Deutschen Hindukusch—Expedition 1935 der Deutschen Forschungsgemeinschaft	...	...	Berlin	1937
<b>Schuyler</b> —Turkistan	...	...	...	1876
<b>Scott G. B.</b> —Afghan and Pathan	...	...	London	1929
<b>Second Afghan War (The)</b> —1878—80. Prepared in the Intelligence Branch of the Indian Army Headquarters	...	...	London	1908
<b>Seifert (R.)</b> —Der Anteil Deutsch lands an der Wirtschaftlichen Entwicklung Afghanistans	...	...	Stüttgart	1929
<b>Seward (A. C.)</b> —Mesozoic Plants from Afghanistan and Afghan-Turkistan	...	...	...	1912
<b>Shadbolt</b> —The Afghan Campaigns of 1878—80, 2 Vols.	...	...	...	1882
<b>Shadwell</b> —Lockhart's Advance through Tirah	...	...	...	1898
<b>Shahamat Ali</b> —The Sikhs and Afghans	...	...	London	1847
<b>Shah (S. I. A.)</b> —Afghanistan of the Afghans	...	...	London	1928
—The Tragedy of Amanullah	...	...	London	1933
<b>Starr (L. A.)</b> —Frontier Folk of the Afghan Border	...	...	London	1921
<b>Stein (Sir A.)</b> —Innermost Asia, Vols. I, II, III, IV	...	...	Oxford	1928
<b>Stein (M. A.)</b> —Zin Geschichte der Cähis von Kabul	...	...	Stuttgart	1893
<b>Stemdale</b> —The Afghan Knife	...	...	...	1879
<b>Stocqueller (J. H.)</b> —Memorials of Afghanistan	...	...	Calcutta	1843
<b>Strafgesetzbuch.</b> —Das afghanische, vom Jahre 1924 mit den Zusatz vom J. 1925	...	...	Berlin	1928
<b>Stratil-Sauer</b> —Fahrt und Fessel. Mit dem Motorrad von Leipzig nach Afghanistan	...	...	Berlin	1927
<b>Stratil-Sauer (G.)</b> —From Leipzig to Kabul, Translated from German)	...	...	London	...
<b>Sultan Mohd. Khan (Mir Munshi)</b> —The Life of Abdur Rahman. 2 Vols.	...	...	London	1900
—Constitution and Laws of Afghanistan	...	...	London	1910
<b>Tablot (Capt. M. G.)</b> —The Rock-cut Caves and Statues of Bamiyan. Journal Royal Asiatic Society	...	...	...	1886
<b>Tanzi (Gastone)</b> —Viaggio in Afghanistan. Published by Maia	...	...	Milano	1929
<b>Tarich-i-Afghan</b> —Geschichti der Kriege Zwischen Persern und Afghanistan	...	...	Stambul	1277H.

# APPENDIX IV

<b>Tate (G. P.)—The Frontiers of Baluchistan</b>	...	...	1909
— The Kingdom of Afghanistan...	...	Bombay	1911
<b>Taylor (W.)—Scenes and Adventures in Afghanistan</b>	...	London	1847
<b>Thackeray (Sir E.)—Reminiscences of the Indian Mutiny and Afghanistan</b>	...	London	1916
<b>Thomas (Lowell)—Beyond Khyber Pass</b>	...	N. D.	
<b>Thorburn—Asiatic Neighbours</b>	...	...	1894
<b>Thorburn (S. S.)—Bannu: or Our Afghan Frontier</b>	...	London	1876
<b>Thornton (Mr. &amp; Mrs.)—Leaves from an Afghan Scrap Book</b>	...	London	1910
<b>Thornton—A Gazetteer of the Countries Adjacent to India on the North-West...</b>	...	London	1844
<b>Treaty—between the British and Afghan Governments signed at Kabul, November 22, 1921. (Ratifications exchanged at Kabul, February 6, 1922)</b>	...	London	1922
<b>Trinkler (Dr. Enil)—Afghanistan. Eine Landeskundliche Studie</b>	...	Gotha	1928
— Afghanistan von Herat nach Kabul	...	...	1924
— Aus dem westlichsten Teiles des Afghanschen, Hindu Kush	...	...	1925
— Quer durch Afghan nach Indien	...	Berlin	1925
<b>Trumpp (Dr. E.)—Grammar of the Pashto</b>	...	London	1873
<b>Vaughan (J. L.)—Grammar and Vocabulary of the Pashto Language</b>	...	Calcutta	1901
<b>Vavilov (N. I.) and Bukinich (D.D.)—Agricultural Afghanistan with English Summary</b>	...	Leningrad	1929
<b>Vigne (G. T.)—A personal Narrative of a visit to Ghazni, Kabul and Afghanistan</b>	...	London	1843
<b>Viollis (A.)—Tourmente Sur l'Afghanistan</b>	...	Paris	1930
<b>Voigt (Martin)—Kafiristan</b>	...	Breslau	1933
<b>War with Afghanistan (The)—1919. Prepared in the Intelligence Branch of the Indian Army Headquarters...</b>	...	London	1926
<b>Warburton (Sir Robert)—Eighteen Years in the Khyber, 1879—1898</b>	...	...	1900
<b>Wheeler (S.)—A. Rahman Khan</b>	...	...	...
<b>White-Lead—The Pre-Mohammedan Coinage of N. Western India</b>	...	...	1922

## AFGHANISTAN

<b>Wild (Roland)</b> --Ammanullah	...	...	...	London	1932
<b>Willocks</b> --From Kabul to Kumassi	...	...	...	London	1904
<b>Wilson</b> --Ariana Antiqua. A descriptive account of the Antiquities and Coins of Afghanistan	...	...	...	London	1841
<b>Wood</b> --Personal Narrative of a journey to the Source of the River Oxus	...	...	...	...	1872
<b>Walker (P. F.)</b> --Afghanistan: a short account of Afghanistan, its history, and our dealings with it	...	...	...	London	1881
<b>Wyllie</b> --Essays on the External Policy of India	...	...	...	...	1875
<b>Wylly (Col. H. C.)</b> --From the Black Mountain to Waziris- tan	...	...	...	...	1912
<b>Yate (Maj. C. E.)</b> --Northern Afghanistan	...	...	...	London	1888
— Travels with the Afghan Boundary Commission. (England & Russia Face to Face in Asia)	...	...	...	...	1887
<b>Yate (Lt.-Col. C. C.)</b> --Khurassan and Sistan	...	...	...	Edinburgh & London	1900

# APPENDIX IV

## RUSSIAN BOOKS ON AFGHANISTAN

<b>Abdurrahman Khan Emir</b> —Awto-biografia (Translated from Persian) ... ..	Moscow	1902
<b>Afghanistan</b> —HeratsKaia u Kandahars Kia Prowensie. (The Provinces of Herat and Kandahar) ... ..	Tashkent	1911
<b>Afghanskaya Granechenie</b> —(Afghan Boundaries) ... ..	Peter-burg	1886
<b>Anuchin</b> —Brozdin, Gorodcow it Gouko Kryajin Afghani-tan ... ..	Moscow	1923
<b>Andreiw (M. S.)</b> —Po Etnografii Afghanistan ... ..	Tashkent	1928
<b>Arshita</b> —Afghanistan i poslednie Sobitie. (Afghanistan and the Recent Events). Journal Nowoi Wostoka ... ..	...	1929
<b>Belaya Kniga (Vol. I)</b> —The White Book ... ..	...	...
<b>Biolleten</b> —Pressi Wostoka, W. 3 ... ..	...	1929
<b>Borns (A.)</b> —Kabul ... ..	Moscow	1847
<b>B.-Ko, (K.)</b> —Zametki po Agrarnomu Woprosu ow Afghanistan. (Afghan Agrarian Problems). Journal na Gorubej nogo Wostoka W. 2 ... ..	...	1932
<b>Cobolli (W.)</b> —Anglo-Afghanskie rasperie (Anglo-Afghan War) ... ..	...	...
<b>Dneprowskie</b> —Selsko Khozoistwo HeratsKogo Prowencial. (Agricultural products of Herat Province). Journal KhlopKowoigelo W. 10 ... ..	...	1928
<b>Fashuk (S. L.)</b> —Wnishnaya Torgowliya Afghani-tana ... ..	Tashkent	1928
<b>Getic</b> —Kariewi Maslows ki Ibihlografiya Afghanistan ... ..	Moscow	1928
<b>Gogol (F. W.)</b> —AfghanistanKie Kowri (Afghan Carpet) ... ..	Moscow	1929
<b>Gubiri Markhow</b> —Ob Agrarnikh Otnashenie ow Afghanistan. Journal na Agrarnow Fronte W. 4 ... ..	...	1929
<b>Ilinski</b> —Reformi i rodowi prijitki ow Afghanistan. Journal Mesowoi Khozaist wo Miro wai a Politiki W. 1 ... ..	...	1929
<b>Kush Kaki (Burhan-ud-Din Khan)</b> —Katagan-i-Badakhshan. (Translated from Persian) ... ..	Tashkent	1926
<b>Laboncow</b> —Giologo-Mineralogichiskie Isledowanija na Zapodnom Pamire u ow Prowencie Badakhshana Afghanistan ... ..	Moscow	1928

# AFGHANISTAN

- Lidak**—Afghanistan ego Reforma i ego Znacheniya dlya Wostoka (Afghanistan and its Importance in the East) ... .. Moscow 1931
- Logofet (D. N.)**—Russko-Afghans Kai Granica (Russian-Afghan Border) ... .. Petersburg 1909
- Bukharsko-Afghan Kay a Granica, (Bukhara-Afghan Border) ... .. Petersburg 1909
- Melnikow**—Puti of Termeza k Kabula (Routes between Termiz and Kabul) ... .. 1907
- Monich**—Afghansi Turkistar, Journal Nowi Wostoka W. 16-17 ... ..
- Narimano**—Afghanistan ow Ogne (Afghanistan in Fire) ... Moscow 1930
- Nikulin (O.)**—Zapiski Sputnika (Reminiscences) ... Leningrad 1932
- Chetere nadt sat Mesiasow ow Afghanistane, 1923, (14 months in Afghanistan) ... ..
- Obucheb (W. A.)**—Iskopaemi Bogatstwa Afghanistana, (Mineral Wealth of Afghanistan). Journal Nowoe Wostoka W. 16-17 ... .. 1927
- PalioKaitis**—Ekonomichis Kogo Programa Afghans Kogo. Jurnal W. 3 ... .. 1932
- Auto Transport ow Afghanistane. (Motor Transport in Afghanistan). Jurnal W. 1 ... .. 1932
- Japonskaia Torgowaya ek spansiya ow Afghanistane. (Japan Goods in Afghanistan). Jurnal W. 8-9 ... .. 1932
- Podbornoe**—Opisanie Persia u Gosudarstwa Kabula, Vol. III. (Complete Information about Afghanistan and Persia) ... .. Moscow 1829
- Primakow (B. M.)**—Afghanistan ow Ogne. (Afghanistan in Fire) ... .. Moscow 1930
- Raskolnikow (F.)**—Russia i Afghanistan. Jurnal Nowi Wostoka W. 4.
- Susialnie Koren Afghaniskie Sobitiya. (Afghan Affairs) ... .. Prawda 4-4-1929
- Anglickie Ultimatom u Afghanistan (English Ultimatum to Afghanistan) ... .. Moscow 1930

# APPENDIX IV

<b>Reisner (Prof. I. M.)—Strany Wostoka.</b> (Eastern Countries) Vol. II	...	..	..	...	Moscow	1236
<b>—</b> Afghanistan	...	...	..	...	Moscow	1930
<b>Reisner Lorisa—</b> Afghanistan	...	...	...	...	Moscow	1925
<b>Ribachka—</b> Ow Gostakh Emua Afghanistan	...	..	..	...	Moscow	1945
<b>Ritter K—</b> Kabulsta (Kafiristan)	...	...	...	...	Moscow	1867
<b>Ritteh (G.)—</b> Afghane kie Woprosi (Afghan Affairs)	..	..	..	...	Moscow	1905
<b>Sementowskogo (D. S.)—</b> Zapiski Po Afghanskogo Woprosu (Notes on Afghan Affairs)	..	...	..	..		1907
<b>Snesarev (A. E.)—</b> Afghanistan	...	..	..	...	Moscow	1921
<b>Shuan (E.)—</b> Wostanie ow Afghanistana. (Unrest in Afghanistan)	...	...	...	...	Leninograd	1930
<b>Sinaya Kniga—</b> (Green Book) Ministry of Foreign Affairs				...	Moscow	1918
<b>Sokolow-Strakhov—</b> Afghanistan ow Mirowoi Woine, 1914—1918 (Afghanistan and the War of 1914—1918).				...	..	
<b>Sokolow-Strakhov (R. I.)—</b> Grajdanskaja Woina ow Afghanistan (Afghan Civil War) 1928-1929	...	..	..	...	Moscow	1931
<b>Sprawka po</b> Afghanistan—(Information about Afghanistan)	...	..	...	...	...	1917
<b>Srawni—</b> Anglo-Afghanskogo Woina. (Anglo-Afghan War)				...	Tashkent	1922
<b>Vavilof (I. N.) and Bukinich—</b> Zemledelches kie Afghanistan (Agricultural Afghanistan)	...	...	...	...	Moscow	1929
<b>Woit—</b> Afghanistan	...	...	...	...	Moscow	1926
<b>—</b> Afghanistan	...	...	...	...	Moscow	1927
<b>Worujenaya Sila</b> Afghanistana—(Afghan Military Strength)	...	...	...	...	Tashkent	1908
<b>Yaworski (I. L.)—</b> Puteshestwa Russkogo Posolstwa Po Afghanistan, etc (Journey in Afghanistan) 2 Vols.	..	..	..	...	Moscow	1882-83

# AFGHANISTAN

## BOOKS IN ORIENTAL LANGUAGES

### Persian—

<i>Tarikh-i-Khurshid-i-Jahan</i> , by Sher Mohammed Khan	...	Lucknow
<i>Tarikh-i-Sultani</i> , by Sultan Mohammed Khan	...	Bombay
<i>Jamaul-Twarikh</i> , by Qazi Faqir Mohammed Khan	...	Lucknow
<i>Makhzan-i-Afghani</i> , by Neamatullah. (English translation available)	... ..	Lahore
<i>Tabaqat-i-Akhari</i> , by Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad-i-Hirvi	...	Lucknow
<i>Tarikh-i-Rashidi</i> , by Mirza Haider Khan Korgan	...	...
<i>Tajul Twarikh</i> , by Amir Abdur Rahman Khan	...	Lucknow
<i>Sirajul-Twarikh</i> , by Mullah Faiz Mohammed Khan	...	Kabul, 1917
<i>Tarikh-i-Afghan</i> , by Farhad Mirza	... ..	Tehran
<i>Tatimmatulbayan Fittarikh-i-Afghan</i> , by Sayed Jamal-ud-Din Afghani. Translated from Arabic into Persian by Mohammed Amin Khogyani, Editor of <i>Anees</i>	...	Kabul
<i>Nadir-i-Afghan</i> , by Burhan-ud-Din Kashkaki, Vol. 1	...	Kabul, 1930
<i>Buhran-o-Nijat</i> (The Crisis and the Salvation 1928-29), by Mohi-ud-Din Anees	... ..	Kabul, 1930
<i>Rahnumai Katghan-o-Badakhshan</i> (A Guide to Katghan-Badakhshan), by Burhan-ud-Din Kashkaki	...	Kabul, 1934
<i>Chiragh-i-Anjuman</i> (The Lamp of Society), by Mullah Abdul Hakim Rustaqi	... ..	Lahore
<i>Lul-i-Badakhshan</i> (The Ruby of Badakhshan) by Mulla Abdul Hakim Rustaqi	... ..	Lahore
<i>Asar-i-Herat</i> (Ruins of Herat), by Khalili Afghan, 3 Vols.	...	Herat, 1928
<i>Jughrafiya-i-Afghanistan</i> , by Mohammed Ali	...	Lahore, 1927
<i>Tarikh-i-Afghanistan</i> , by Abdul Mohammed Irani, Editor of <i>Chehra Numa</i> . 5 Vols.	... ..	Manuscript
<i>Sinai</i> , by Khalili Afghan	... ..	Kabul
<i>Balkh</i> , by Khalili Afghan	... ..	1935
<i>Tarikh-i-Afghan</i> , by Sher Mohammed Khan	...	Manuscript
<i>Sher Shah Suri</i> , by Mohammed Usman Sidqi	...	Do.
<i>Jughrafiya-i-Herat</i> , by Mohammed Usman Sidqi	...	Do.
<i>Tarikh-i-Herat</i> , by Ghulam Jailani Khan Jalali	...	Do.
<i>Balkh</i> , by Karim-i-Nazihi	... ..	Do.

## APPENDIX IV

<i>Armaghan-i-Badakhshan</i> , by Shah Abdullah-i-Badakhshi	..	Manuscript
<i>Tarikh-i-Adabiat-i-Pashto</i> , by Abdul Hai Habibi	...	Do.
<i>Mazarat-i-Ghazni</i> , by Sh. Mohammed Raza	..	Do.
<i>Tarikh-i-Zenul Akhbar</i> , by Gardezi...	...	Berlin
<i>Tarikh-i-Hafiz</i> , by Abroo-i-Hirvi	...	Lucknow
<i>Tarikh-i-Herat</i> , by Moin-ud-Din Asfazari	...	Bombay
<i>Matla-us-Sadain</i> , by Abdur Razaq Samarqandi	...	Lahore
<i>Mazarat-i-Herat</i> , by Aishi, 2 Vols.	...	Herat
<i>Tarikh-i-Farishta</i> , by Mohammed Qasim Farishta. (English Translation Available)	...	Lucknow
<i>Habib-us-Siyar</i> , by Khund Mir	...	Bombay
<i>Rozatus Safa</i> , by Amir Khund	...	Lucknow
<i>Jughrafiya Tarikh-i-Iran</i> , by Barthold, translated into Persian by Hamza Sar Dawar	...	Tehran
<i>Tuzak-i-Timuri</i> , Memoirs of Tamerlane	...	...
<i>Tuzak-i-Babari</i> , by Emperor Babar.	...	...
<i>Salnama-i-Kabul</i> (Annals of the Literary Society, Kabul,	...	1933, 1934, 1935, 1936, 1937, 1938.
<i>Collections of Mujalla-i-Kabul</i>	...	1931, 1932, 1933, 1934, 1935, 1936, 1937
<i>Collections of Islah</i>	...	1929, 1930, 1931, 1932, 1933, 1934, 1935, 1936, 1937
<i>Khawatir-i-Qahrman wa Muslih Kabir</i> , by Mohd. Saleh	...	Kabul, 1938
<i>Ainul Wagai</i> , by Mohd. Yusuf Huvi	...	Tehran
<i>Afghan Customs Act 1313 H. Solar (1911 A. D.)</i> , Translated into English by M. Abdullah Khan	...	Kabul, 1935
<i>Tarikh-i-Afghanistan Dar Mudat Sad Sal</i> (Afghan History in the Last Century), Iqdam Journal	...	Tehran
<i>Tarikh-i-Ahmad Shah-i-Durrani</i> , by Sayed Hussain Shirazi	...	...
<i>Musafir</i> , by Dr. Sir Mohammad Iqbal	...	Lahore, 1934
<i>Tashkilat-i-Asasi</i> (Afghan Constitution)	...	Kabul, 1932

### Pashto—

*Makhzan-i-Afghani, Akhund-i-Derwezah*, being a history of the Afghans from the most remote times.



## AFGHANISTAN

<i>Tarikh-i-Murassa</i> , by Atzal Khan-i-Khatak	...	...
<i>Tarikh-i-Afghanistan</i> , by Munshi Ahmad Khan	...	..
<i>Pashto Sind</i> , by H. E 'A. A' Mohammed Gul Khan (A Concise Pashto Dictionary)	..	... Kabul, 1937
<i>Fiqaul Lugha</i> (A Pashto Dictionary) by M. Mohd. Hassan Yakub. (In Press)	... ..	..

### Urdu—

<i>Hayat-i-Nadir</i> , by Mohammed Hussain Khan	..	Jullundui, 1934
<i>Zawal-i-Ghazi</i> (The Fall of Amanullah) by Aziz-i-Hindi	..	Amritsar, 1934
<i>Waqat-i-Durrani</i> , by Abdur Rahman	... ..	...
<i>Tarikh-i-Ahmad Shah Durrani</i> , by Munshi Abdul Kaim	...	..
<i>Dab-dab-i-Amiri</i> (Being an Autobiography of Amir Abdur Rahman Khan)	... ..	...

## APPENDIX V

### CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

#### (MODERN AFGHANISTAN)

##### The Hetakis

	A.D.
Mir Wais Khan declared independence at Kandahar...	1709
Mir Wais Khan, King of Kandahar ... ..	1709—1715
Mir Abdullah       "       "       ... ..	1715-1716
Mir Mahmud       "       "       ... ..	1716—1722
Mir Mahmud Conquered Persia       ... ..	1722
Mir Mahmud, King of Kandahar and Emperor of Persia       ... ..	1722—1725
Shah Ashraff, Emperor of Persia       ... ..	1725—1730
Mir Hussain (son of Mir Wais), King of Kandahar ...	1725—1736
Nadir-i-Iran Took Kandahar and Kabul       ... ..	1736—1738

##### The Sadozais or Durranis

Emperor Ahmad Shah Abdali (Durrani)       ... ..	1747—1773
Third Battle of Panipat       ... ..	6th Jan., 1761
Emperor Timur Shah       ... ..	1773—1793
"   Shah Zaman       ..       ... ..	1793-1800
"   Shah Mahmud       ... ..	1800—1803
"   Shah Shuja       ... ..	1803—1809
"   Shah Mahmud (again)       ... ..	1809—1818
Civil War       ... ..	1818—1835

##### The Mohammedzais or Barakzais

Amir Dost Mohammed Khan       ... ..	1835-1839
First Anglo-Afghan War       ... ..	1839—1842
Emperor Shah Shuja (again)       ... ..	1839—1842
The Massacre of the British Garrison       ... ..	January, 1842
Amir Dost Mohammed Khan (again)       ... ..	1843—1863
"   Sher Ali Khan       ..       ... ..	1863—1867
"   Afzal Khan       ... ..	1867—1868

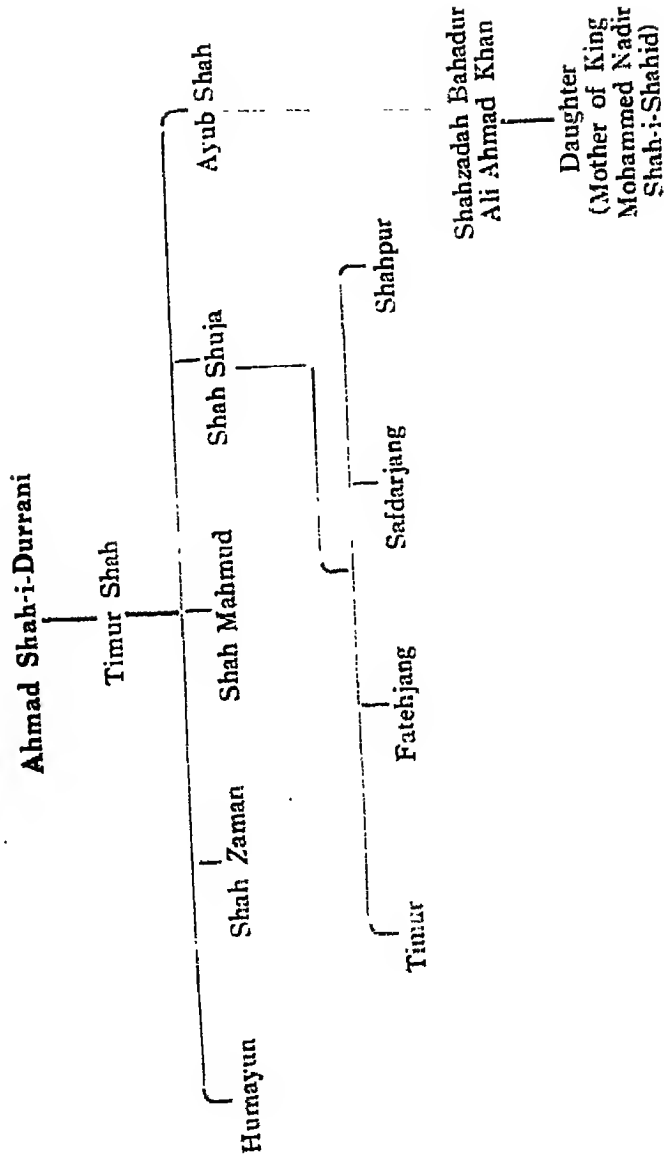
## AFGHANISTAN

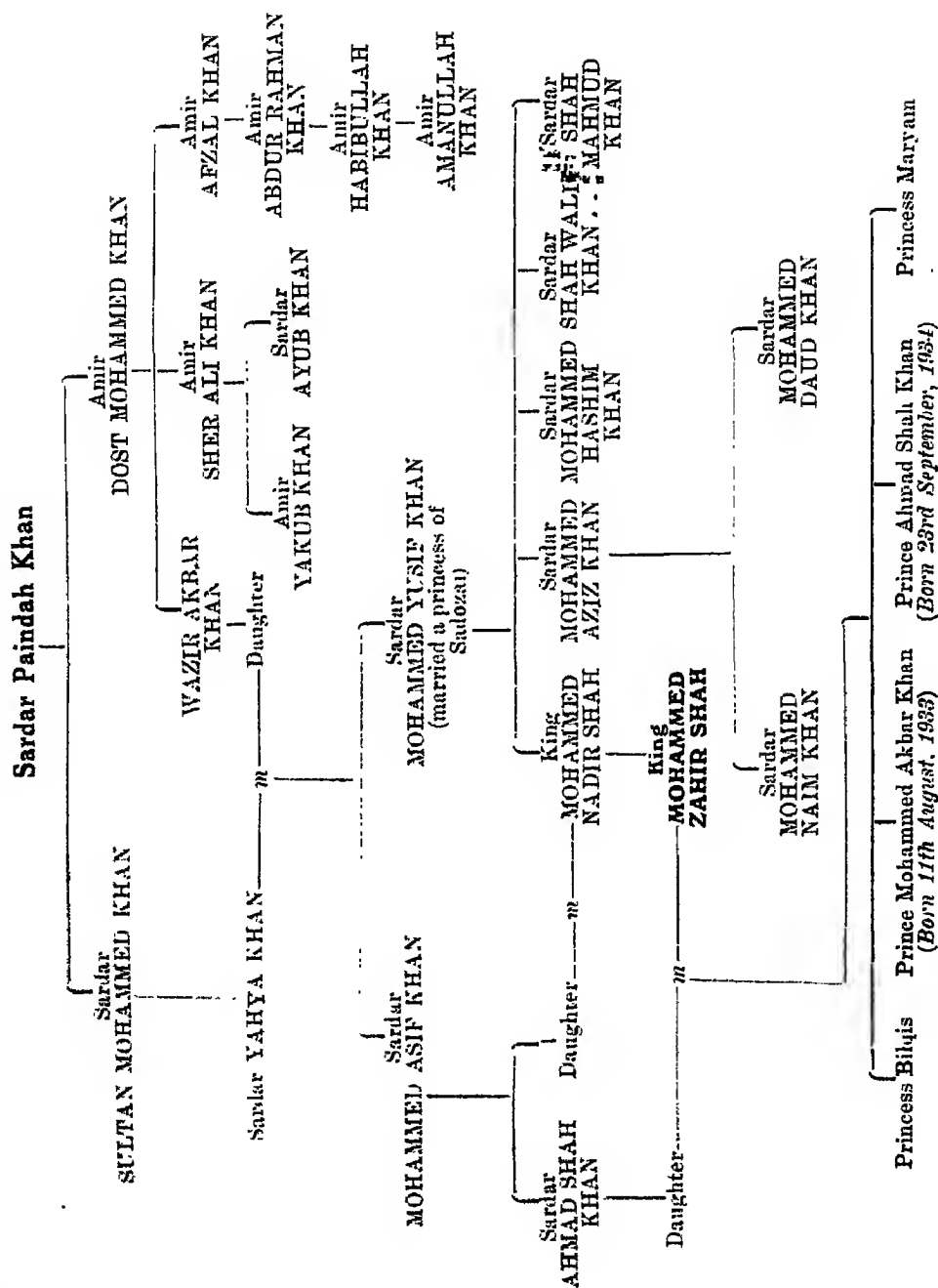
Amir Azam Khan	...	...	...	1868-1869
„ Sher Ali Khan (again)	...	...	...	1869—1879
„ Yakub Khan	...	...	...	1879
The Treaty of Gandomak	...	...	...	26th May, 1879
Second Anglo-Afghan War	...	...	...	1879-1880
The Battle of Maiwand—Disaster of the British Army				27th July, 1880
Amir Abdur Rahman Khan	...	...	...	1880—1901
Panjdeh Conflict	...	...	...	1884
The Treaty of Durand	...	...	...	12th Nov., 1893
Amir Habibullah Khan	...	...	...	1901—1919
„ Amanullah Khan (assumed the title of King)	...	...	...	1919—1928
Third Anglo-Afghan War or War of Independence)	...	...	...	1919
Revolution and Reign of Terror	...	...	...	Nine months
King Mohammed Nadir Shah	...	...	...	16th Oct. 1929 to 8th Nov. 1933
<b>His Majesty King Mohammed Zahir Shah</b>				<b>From 8th Nov. 1933</b>

# APPENDIX VI

## GENEALOGICAL TABLE

### THE DYNASTY OF THE DURRANIS (THE SADOZAI FAMILY)





## APPENDIX VII

### PERIODICALS

Name.	Place of Issue.	Annual Subscription. (For Foreign Countries)	Remarks.
Kabul ...	Literary Society, Kabul	10 shillings	Monthly (Pashto-Persian) Literary Review
Urdu-i-Afghan ...	Riyast-i-Arkan-i-Harbiah, Kabul	10 shillings	Monthly Pashto-Persian (Military)
Ainah-i-Irfan (Mirror of Education)	Riyast-i-Talim-o-Tarbiah, Ministry of Education, Kabul	Rs. 4 Indian	Monthly (Pashto-Persian) Educational
Adabi-Herat ...	Riyast-i-Anjuman-i-Adabi, Shahr-i-Naw, Herat	10 shillings	Monthly Persian, Literary Review
Mujallah-i-Baladiyah (Municipal Journal)	Herat ...	5 shillings	Monthly, Persian
Al-Falah (Salvation)...	Riasat Jamiyatul Ulama, Ministry of Justice, Kabul	10 shillings	Monthly Religious (Pashto-Persian)
Iqtisad (Economic Journal)	Gulistan Sarai, Ministry of Commerce, Kabul	10 shillings	Fortnightly (Persian)
Mujalah-i-Sihyah (Health Journal)	Ministry of Health, Kabul	8 shillings	Fortnightly Persian
Islah (Reform) ...	Jadahi Nijat, Kabul	£ 1-10-0 (Gold)	Daily (Pashto-Persian)

# AFGHANISTAN

Name.	Place of Issue.	Annual Subscription.	Remarks.
Bedar (Awake) ...	Mazar-i-Sharif ...	Rs. 4 Indian	Weekly (Persian-Pashto)
Ihtihad (Union) ...	Khanabad ...	Rs. 4 Indian	Weekly (Persian)
Tul-i-Afghan (Afghan Renaissance)	Arg, Kandahar ...	Rs. 5 Indian	Weekly, Pashto
Itifaq-i-Islam (Islamic Unity)	Herat ...	Rs. 4 Indian	Weekly, Persian
Ihtihad-i-Mashraqi (Eastern Unity)	Jalalabad ...	Rs. 5 Indian	Weekly, Pashto
Anees (Comrade) ...	Jadah-i-Nijat, Kabul	10 shillings	Weekly Pashto-Persian

# APPENDIX VIII

## POSTAL INFORMATION

Class	Description.	RATES.		Remarks.
		Inland.	Foreign	
Post cards ...	Single .	10 pul	45 pul	Size. Min. 10 cm × 7 cm. Max. 15 cm. × 10½ cm.
	Reply .	20 pul	90 pul	
Letters ..	5 gms.	15 pul	75 pul to 20 gms.	Size. Min. 6 cm. × 4 cm. Max. 45 cm. × 45 cm.
	Each additional 5 gms.	15 pul	45 pul for each additional 20 gms	
Business and Official Papers.	Max. Weight 2 k. gms.	10 pul For each 50 gms.	15 pul For each 50 gms.	
Printed Matter	Max. Weight 2 k. gms.	Do.	Do.	
Samples ...	Max. Weight 5 k. gms	Do.	Do.	
Books ...	Max Weight 3 k gms.	Do.	Do.	
Registration Fee	...	15 pul	75 pul	



# AFGHANISTAN

## TELEPHONE AND TELEGRAPHIC INFORMATION

### elephone—

For 5 minutes within the limits of a province, 1½ Af.

For 5 minutes to any part of the country, 3 Afs.

### elegraph—

Inland : 30 puls each word.

Foreign :—

Countries.	Ordinary		Code	
	Rates per word.		Rates per word.	
	Afs.	Puls.	Afs.	Puls.
Ceylon ... ..	2	30	1	45
Chicago (Zone II) ... ..	10	70	6	45
China ... ..	7	0	4	25
Egypt (Zone I, III) ... ..	9	05	5	45
Egypt (Zone II) ... ..	9	50	5	20
England .. ..	6	5	3	70
Finland ... ..	7	40	4	50
France ... ..	6	90	4	20
Germany ... ..	7	10	4	25
India ... ..	0	90	0	55
Iran ( <i>via</i> India) ... ..	6	40	3	85
Iran ( <i>via</i> Islam Qila) ... ..	0	90	0	55
Iraq ... ..	5	40	3	30
Italy ... ..	7	30	4	45
Japan ... ..	10	80	6	50
Jeddah ... ..	13	15	7	95
New York (Zone I) ... ..	9	30	5	65
Palestine . ... ..	9	55	5	75
Poland ... ..	7	40	4	50
Rumania ... ..	7	40	4	50
Russia ... ..	2	15	1	20
Singapore ( <i>via</i> Madras) ... ..	6	25	3	80
Sweden ... ..	6	95	4	20
Switzerland ... ..	7	10	4	25
Turkey ... ..	7	40	4	50

Rates of telegrams to countries not mentioned in the list should be ascertained from the telegraph office.

## APPENDIX IX

### AFGHAN CALENDAR

The calendar of the country is based upon the Hijra era. All Government letters and documents bear solar and lunar dates. For financial and revenue purposes the solar year, which begins from the 21st of March, is employed.

The names of the solar months are :—

			No. of Days.	1st Day falls on.
<i>Hamal</i> (Aries) ..	...	..	31	21st March
<i>Saur</i> (Taurus) ...	...	...	31	21st April
<i>Jawza</i> (Gemini)	...	...	31	22nd May
<i>Saratan</i> (Cancer)	...	...	32	22nd June
<i>Asad</i> (Leo) ...	...	...	31	24th July
<i>Sunbulah</i> (Virgo)	...	.	31	24th August
<i>Mizan</i> (Libra) ...	..	..	31	24th September
<i>Aqrab</i> (Scorpio)	...	...	30	25th October
<i>Quas</i> (Sagittarius)	...	...	29	24th November
<i>Jaddi</i> (Capricornus)	..	...	29	23rd December
<i>Dalv</i> (Aquarius)	...	...	30	21st January
<i>Hut</i> (Pisces) ...	...	...	30	20th February

## APPENDIX X

### BANKING & CURRENCY

The remodelling of the currency introduced the 'Afghani' as the unit of the monetary system, as distinct from the old coin 'Kabuli'. An Afghani is a piece of silver, weighing 10 grammes, '900 fine. It is subdivided into 100 puls. The 50 puls pieces called Qirans, are alloy and are the pieces chiefly in circulation. Smaller pieces of nickle, bronze, and copper are also used. Paper currency (of 100, 50, 20, 10, and 5 Afghanis) was introduced in 1936, and has proved to be extremely popular.

Formerly Afghanistan had no bank of its own, and all the banking business was carried on by the wealthy Hindu and Jewish Sarafs—money-lenders. In 1932 the Government succeeded in establishing a bank—Banke Millie Afghan, the Afghan National Bank, with branches at Peshawar, Karachi, Bombay, Paris, Berlin and London, and in all the important towns of the country. The bank, during the space of this short time, has succeeded to a great extent in controlling the exports and imports of the country. Besides other privileges the bank holds monopoly of purchase of foreign currency and all sorts of banking business.

The rate of exchange on 1st August, 1938, was as follows:—

			Se'ling Rate.	Purchasing Rate.
1 Pound Sterling	...	...	53'61 Afghanis	52'75 Afghanis
100 Francs (French)	...	...	32'61 „	29'61 „
100 German Marks	...	...	445'00 „	430'00 „
100 Dollars (U. S. A)	...	...	1112'00 „	1072'00 „
100 Francs (Swiss)	...	...	256'00 „	246'00 „
100 Yens (Japan)	...	...	324'00 „	309 00 „
100 Rupees (Indian)	...	...	400'00 „	395'00 „

## APPENDIX XI

### WEIGHTS & MEASURES

Weights and measures are not uniform throughout the country. The Government is trying to introduce the Metric system.

Weights and measures of Kabul :—

24 nakhuds	...	...	...	1 misqal
24 misqals	...	.	...	1 khurd
4 khurds	...	...	...	1 paw
4 paws	...	...	...	1 charak (3'922 English pounds)
4 charaks	...	...	...	1 seer (15'688     "     "     )
80 seers	...	...	...	1 kharwar

**Measure of length—**

A Kabuli yard (called Gaz-i-Shahi) = 41'89 inches.

1 Koroh is 4000 jarib yards = 3222 English yards.

**Square Measure—**

A jarib is 60 yards by 60 yards ; the jarib yard being = 29 inches.



## INDEX

### A

- Abbasides, 15  
 Abbott, Maj.-Gen. A., 127  
 Abbott, Capt. J., 127  
 Abdani 1, 105, 111  
 Abdani 2, 105, 111  
 Abdani 3, 105, 111  
 Abdul Ahad Khan, 61  
 Abdul Ali & Abdul Zahir, 114  
 Abdul Aziz, 114, 120  
 Abdul Aziz & Abdul Latif, 114  
 Abdul Baqi & Abdul Wahid, 114  
 Abdul Ghafoor & Mohd. Roz, 114  
 Abdul Hai Habibi, 145  
 Abdul Hakim & Abdul Halim, 114  
 Abdul Hakim Rustaqi, 146  
 Abdul Hamid, 54  
 Abdul Hamid & Abdul Aziz, 114  
 Abdul Jabbar, 114  
 Abdul Karim, 146  
 Abdul Karim & Sher Mohd., 120  
 Abdul Khaliq, 114  
 Abdul Khaliq & Abdul Qayum, 121  
 Abdul Khaliq & Abdul Wahab, 114  
 Abdul Khaliq Khan, 123  
 Abdullah, 93  
 Abdullah Ansar, Khawja, 93  
 Abdullah Khan, 123, 145  
 Abdul Mohammed Irani, 144  
 Abdul Salam, 121  
 Abdul Shakoor, 121  
 Abdul Qadir, 114, 120  
 Abdul Qadus, 123  
 Abdul Wahab, 123  
 Abdur Rahim, 123  
 Abdur Rahman, 54, 123, 146  
 Abdur Rahman Jami, 93  
 Abdur Rahman Khan, 61  
 Abdur Rahman Khan, Amir, 13, 84, 141, 144, 146, 148, 150  
 Abdur Rahman & Fazal Ahmad, 114  
 Abdur Raoof, 121  
 Abdur Raoof & Abdul Hakim, 115  
 Abdur Razaq Samarqandi, 145  
 Abi crops, 31  
 Abi Jalil, 94  
 Abjosh (raisin), 35  
 Abroo-i-Hirvi, 145  
 Abu Talib, 93  
 Academy of Philosophy, 84  
 Achakzai, 13  
 Adabi Herat, 151  
 Adam Khan Khairati, 126  
 Adler, 35  
 Administration, 67  
 Adye, Col. J., 127  
 Aerodrome, 84  
 Aeroplanes, 49  
 Afghan Customs Act, 74  
 Afghan Independence Day, 83  
 Afghans, 44, 70, 154, 156  
 Afghan National Bank (Banke Mille Afghan), 66, 85, 115, 156  
 Afghan Revolution, 68  
 Afghan Sheep, 41  
 Afghan Trade Agent, 74  
 Afridi, 13, 19  
 Afzal Khan, 54  
 Afzal Khan, Amir, 147, 150  
 Afzal Khan Khatak, 146  
 Aga Mohd. Hussain, 123  
 Agra, 4

## INDEX

- Agram, 17  
 Ahmad, J. D. & A. Aziz, 127  
 Ahmad Jan, 121  
 Ahmad Khan, 146  
 Ahmad Shah, 115  
 Ahmad Shah Abdali, 5, 54, 147  
 Ahmad Shah Durrani, 90, 149  
 Ahmad Shah Khan, Prince, 150  
 Ahmad Shah Khan, Sardar, 6, 151  
 Aibak, 1, 33, 77, 97, 105, 110, 112  
 Ain-i-Irfan, 65, 151  
 Ain-ul-Wagai, 145  
 Aishi, 145  
 Aitchinson, 127  
 Ajanta, 1  
 Akhund Musa, 105  
 Akhwandi Darveza, 54  
 Akrobat, 10, 17, 18  
 Aksu, 12, 20, 21  
 Aktepe, 23  
 Ala-ud-Din, 115  
 Alexandar, 17, 80  
 Alfafa, 37  
 Al-Falah, 151  
 Ali, Mohammed, 127, 144  
 Aliabad Dairy Farm, 85  
 Ali Ahmad Khan, Shahzada Bahadur, 149  
 Alieli Turkomans, 10  
 Ali Lala, 88  
 Alinghar, 18, 25  
 Ali Mohd & Wali Mohd., 115  
 Ali Shang, 18, 25  
 Allen, I. N., 127  
 Almonds, 28, 30, 33, 34, 38  
 Almutawakal Allallah, 68  
 Altamoor, 100  
 Aman Mohd, 115  
 Amanullah Khan, King, 61, 148, 150  
 Amir Khund, 145  
 Amir Chand & Duni Chand, 126  
 Amu (Oxus, Panja), 9—11, 15, 16, 20, 96  
 Andkhui, 10, 31, 44, 48, 76, 77, 98, 105, 109, 110, 112  
 Andreiw, M. S., 141  
 Andrew, 127  
 Anees, 152  
 Anglo-Afghan Trade Convention, 127  
 Anglo-Russian Agreement, 11  
 Anglo-Russian Pamir Commission, 12  
 Animal breeding, 63  
 Ankara, 73  
 Ansar, 93  
 Ansari, Mirza, 54  
 Antimony, 48  
 Apple, 28, 30, 34  
 Apricots, 28, 30, 33, 34  
 Aqachashmat, 105, 111  
 Aqchah, 11, 31, 97, 98, 105, 109, 110, 112  
 Aqrah, 155  
 Aquarius, 155  
 Arabic, 55  
 Aral, Sea of, 20  
 Ardewan, 6, 98  
 Arg (Kandahar), 152  
 Arg (Royal Palace), 84, 109  
 Arghandab, 24, 34, 91, 105, 108  
 Arghandab-Taranak-Arghasan, 24  
 Arghandi, 47, 87, 105, 108  
 Arghasan, 90  
 Aries, 155  
 Arithmetic, 65  
 Arkona and Arjandas, 115  
 Amaghani Badakhshan, 145  
 Army, 61  
 Arts, 63  
 Arts College, 43, 84  
 Arshita, 141  
 Aruchin, 141

## INDEX

Aryans, 17  
 Asafoetida, 30, 38, 49  
 Asad, 155  
 Asa Nand, 121  
 Asar-i-Herat, 144  
 Asbestos, 47  
 Ash, 38  
 Ashe, 127  
 Asmar, 17, 30, 38, 80, 83  
 Asphalt, 49  
 Ass, 40  
 Ata Mohammed Khan, 61  
 Atkinson, J., 127  
 Attock, 25, 53  
 Aurangzeb, Emperor, 54  
 Avicenna, 5  
 Ayub Khan, Sardar, 150  
 Ayub Shah, 149  
 Azim Khan, 123  
 Azim Khan, Amir, 148  
*Aziz-i-Hindi*, 146

### B

Babar, 4, 17, 145  
 Babar's Garden, 5, 85, 86  
 Bahlol-i-Dana, 88  
 Bacha-i-Saqao, 83  
 Bachhofer, L., 127  
 Bactria, 1, 95  
 Badakhshan, 11, 22, 26, 30, 40, 47, 48,  
     55, 97, 100  
 Badghis, 19  
 Bagh-i-Bala, 84  
 Bagh-i-Jahan Numa, 105  
 Bagh-i-Karta, 93  
 Bagh-i-Maulana Jami, 93  
 Bagh-i-Qalicha, 93  
 Bagh-i-Rubat-i-Ghorian, 93  
 Bagh-i-Shahi, 93  
 Baghlan, 96, 100, 105, 110

Bahari harvest (spring crop), 30  
 Bajaj Singh & Barut Singh, 115  
 Bajah, 17  
 Bajawar, 13  
 Baku, 6  
 Balahissar, 83  
 Balkh, 1, 2, 16, 31-33, 97,—99, 105,  
     109, 110, 144  
 Bala Murghab, 97, 98, 105, 109, 112  
 Balfur, Lady Betty, 121  
 Baluchi language, 54  
 Baluchistan, 9, 13  
 Balulah, 105, 109  
 Balut Tagh, 25  
 Bamian, 1, 2, 16, 17, 45, 76, 77, 95, 96,  
     98, 99, 105, 109, 112  
 Band-i-Amir, 98, 105  
 Band-i-Ghazi, 82, 106  
 Band-i-Siraj, 42  
 Banjamin, 115  
 Bannu, 53  
 Barahan Singh & Sohan Singh, 115  
 Barakzais, 147  
 Baraqi cat, 41  
 Barberry, 35  
 Barfak, 96, 105, 109  
 Barhaq pass, 24  
 Barikah, 82, 105  
 Barley, 28, 30, 32  
 Barnes, Lt. Col. Sir A., 128  
 Barnes, A., 141  
 Barr, Lieut. W., 128  
 Barthold, 145  
 Barthoux, J., 127  
 Bat, 40  
 Battle of Maiwand, 148  
 Bayazid Ansari (Pir-i-Roshan), 54  
 Bay of Bengal, 55  
 Bazai Gumbaz, 21  
 Beans, 29, 30, 37, 40



# INDEX

Bedana pomegranate, 33  
 Bedar, 152  
 Beet-root, 36  
 Begram, 1, 25, 86, 108  
 Belaya Kniga, 141  
 Bellow, H. W., 128  
 Bendersky, 12  
 Behram Shah, 88  
 Berlin, 6, 150  
 Berne, 73  
 Bhagwal mountain, 47  
 Bhagwan Singh & Partab Singh, 115  
 Biddulph, Major, 128  
 Billiards, 85  
 Bilgis, Princess, 150  
 Biolleten, 141  
 Black-berries, 35  
 Black mountain, 13, 18  
 Blumhart, J. F., 128  
 Bodard, 128  
 Bogdanov, L., 128  
 Bombay, 73, 156  
 Bonvalot, 128  
 Bornstein Bosta, Dr. F., 126  
 Boukhary, 128  
 Boulgar, D.C., 128  
 Brass, 49  
 British Legation, 84  
 Broglui, 12, 17, 100  
 Bruce, 128  
 Bruckl, Dr. K., 128  
 Bruxelles, 73  
 Buddhism, 99  
 Buddhist monasteries, 1, 2  
 Budh Singh & Hari Singh, 115  
 Bukhara, 9, 11, 12, 92, 98  
 Bukiz, 98  
 Bukwa, 35, 41, 91  
 Bulbul, 41  
 Bunji Mall & Karam Chand, 115

Bureau of Education, 63, 65  
 Burhano Nijat, 144  
 Bust, 1, 24  
 Butkhak, 82, 105, 108  
 Byron, R., 128

## C

Cabbage, 36  
 Cabinet, 59, 60  
 Calais, 6  
 Camel, 41  
 Cancer, 155  
 Capissa, 1  
 Capricornus, 155  
 Carpets, 43, 49  
 Carrot, 29, 36  
 Casartelli, I. C., 125  
 Caspian Sea, 6, 15, 22, 92  
 Cat, 41  
 Cement, 49  
 Central Asia, 5, 9, 20, 23, 92, 93  
 Central Asian Railway, 11  
 Central Customs House, 84  
 Central Military Hospital, 62  
 Cereals, 30  
 Ceylon, 154  
 Chagai hills, 9  
 Chahar-Asia, 46, 100  
 Chahardar, 17  
 Chahardeh, 5, 25, 85, 87, 95, 105  
 Chakhansur, 32, 41  
 Chakmaktain lake, 21  
 Chakmani, 101  
 Chal, 46  
 Chaman-i-Hazuri, 83  
 Chancha Mast, 25  
 Charan Das & Lall Chand, 115  
 Charas, 74  
 Charikar, 33, 34, 76, 80, 94, 105, 109,  
 112

## INDEX

- Charsu, 92  
 Chashmai Sabz pass, 98  
 Chashma-i-Sher, 105, 110  
 Cherries, 30, 33  
 Chicago, 154  
 Chihal Dukhtaran, 46  
 Chihal Satoon, 46, 85, 86  
 Chihal Zina, 90  
 China, 154  
 Chinese frontier, 12  
 Chiraghi-Anjuman, 144  
 Chin Zai, 105, 110  
 Chitral, 12, 13, 16, 17, 100  
 Cholet, 129  
 Chucha, 126  
 Cinema, 63  
 Cipollo, A, 129  
 Citrus fruits, 28  
 Civil War, 147  
 Clover, 30, 31, 37  
 Coal, 45, 49  
 Cobolli, W., 141  
 Cocoa, 49  
 Cucumbers, 30, 35  
 Coffee, 49  
 College de Montpellier, 68  
 Colquhous, Major J. A. S., 129  
 Column of Maiwand, 90  
 Column of Nijat or Deliverance, 83  
 Colza, 37  
 Communication, 77  
 Conolly, A., 129  
 Constitution, 59  
 Constitutional Law, 55, 59, 68  
 Copper, 46, 49  
 Cotton, 30—32, 35, 49  
 Cotton factories, 33  
 Cotton weaving, 43  
 Cow, 41  
 Cox, 129  
 Crane, 129  
 Cross, 37  
 Cuckoos, 41  
 Cucurbitacea, 35  
 Cunningham, 129  
 Currant, 35, 38  
 Curzon, Hon. G. W., 129  
 Customs, 74  
 Cycles, 49
- D**
- Dabdaba-i-Amiri, 146  
 Da Costa, J., 129  
 Dahan-i-Ghori, 106  
 Dahl, 129  
 Dahud, 116  
 Daizangi mountains, 23  
 Dalip Singh, 126  
 Dalv, 27, 155  
 Dandan Shikan pass, 17  
 Darah-i-Nur, 46  
 Darah-i-Soof, 45  
 Dar-i-Shikari, 105  
 Dar-i-Takht, 94  
 Darmestere, J., 129  
 Derulfunun (Kabul University), 87  
 Darwaz, 12  
 Dasht-i-Bakwa, 31  
 Dasht-i-Deer, 41  
 Dasht-i-Shilgar, 89  
 Dass Mal, 126  
 Datta, Bhupendranath, 129  
 Date-Palm, 34  
 Daulatabad 11, 31, 44, 97, 112  
 Daulat Yar, 23  
 Deccan, 55  
 Deciduous fruits, 28  
 Declaration form, 74  
 Deer, 41  
 Deh Dadi, 105, 110

## INDEX

Dehra Ghazi Khan, 53  
 Dehra Ismail Khan, 53  
 Deh Sabz, 46  
 Dekka, 25, 78, 105, 108  
 Delegation Francaise d' Archæologie, 2, 79  
 Delhi, 73  
 Dengli Dagh, 10  
 Deodar, 38  
 Deram and Chaman Lall, 121  
 Dersai, 21  
 Dilaram 24, 76, 77, 91, 106, 109  
 Dilber, 116  
 Dilkusha Palace, 84  
 Din Mohd., 123  
 Directorate of Inspection and Instruction,  
     63  
 Dneprowskie, 141  
 Doabi-Mekhi-Zarin 76, 77, 95, 106, 109  
 Dog, 41  
 Dollars, 156  
 Dollot, R., 129  
 Dom, 129  
 Domandi, 13  
 Donkey, 41  
 Dori, 91  
 Dorn, B., 129  
 Doshi Bridge, 96  
 Dost Mohammed Khan, Amir, 93, 147,  
     150  
 Doves, 41  
 Duck, 41  
 Duke, J., 130  
 Durah, 17  
 Durrand, Maj. Gen. Sir Henry M., 13, 130  
 Durrand Line, 53  
 Durrani, 24, 147, 149  
 Dwarka Singh, 121  
 Dynamos, 49

## E

Eastern Province, 9, 19, 32, 33, 37, 79  
 Eastwick, 130  
 Education, 63  
 Edwardes, 130  
 Edwardes, Maj. H. B., 130  
 Egg plant, 36  
 Egrigauk, 10  
 Egypt, 154  
 Elementary Education, 64  
 Ellora, 1  
 Elphinstone, Hon. M., 130  
 England, 154  
 English language, 55  
 Eruca setiva, 37  
 Ewald, 130  
 Exports, 48  
 Eyre, Lieut. V, 130

## F

Faculty of Medicine, 63  
 Faculty of Science, 64  
 Faculty of Training, 64, 65  
 Faizabad, 31, 33, 34, 100, 106, 110, 112  
 Faiz Mohd., 123  
 Faiz Mohd. Khan, 60, 144  
 Fakhri Line, 14  
 Fakhar-ud-Din Altai, 14  
 Fane, 130  
 Faqir Mohd. Khan, 144  
 Farah, 9, 31, 32, 34, 35, 76, 91, 92, 106,  
     109, 112  
 Farah Rud, 14, 24  
 Farhad Mirza, 144  
 Fashuk, S. L., 141  
 Fatehabad, 8, 76, 80, 108  
 Fatehjang, 149  
 Fateh Mohd. Khan, 126  
 Fawaid-i-Amah (Public Works), 66  
 Fazal Ahmad Khan, 63

# INDEX

Fazal & Co., 116  
 Fazal Haq Khan, 123  
 Feathers, 48  
 Featherstone, B. K., 130  
 Fermanbeg, 81, 106, 108  
 Ferrier, J. P., 130  
 Field, 130  
 Fig, 28, 30, 33, 34  
 Financial Reforms, 66  
 Fiqaul Lugha, 146  
 Finland, 154  
 Firingil, 46, 47  
 Firoz Koh, 16, 18, 19, 22, 97  
 First Anglo-Afghan War, 147  
 Fisher, 130  
 Flax, 29, 37  
 Fleece, 48  
 Flycatcher, 41  
 Footwear, 49  
 Forbes, 130  
 Forbes (Rosita), 130  
 Forster, G., 130  
 Foucher A., 131  
 Fox, 40  
 Franc, 156  
 France, 73, 154  
 Fraser, 131  
 French language, 55  
 French Legation, 84  
 Fruits, 49  
 Fundamental Law, 60  
 Furon, R., 131  
 Furs, 48

## G

Galachah dialects, 54  
 Gandahara School, 2, 79  
 Gandumak, 33, 81, 106, 108  
 Ganga Wishan & Ram Ditta, 116  
 Gardez, 9, 76, 100, 101, 106, 112

Gardezi, 145  
 Garlic, 36  
 Garmser, 24, 27  
 Gasteiger, 131  
 Gazistan, 106, 110  
 Gawdi-zirah 14  
 Geiger, G. A. A., 131  
 Gemini, 155  
 General Trading House, 116  
 Geneva, 73  
 German language 55  
 Germany, 154  
 Getic, 141  
 Ghabar mountain, 47  
 Ghalzai, 19, 90  
 Ghappar Miti, 126  
 Garmah melons- 30  
 Ghazah, 48  
 Ghazan, 47  
 Ghazni, 1, 16, 26, 27, 31, 42, 44, 76, 77  
 83, 87—89, 101, 108, 112, 116  
 Ghijdi tent, 53  
 Ghilji pony, 14  
 Gholkol mountain, 47  
 Ghorband, 17, 18, 33, 34, 45- 47, 95  
 Ghorian, 112  
 Ghulam Ali & Mohd. Ibrahim, 116  
 Ghulam Ali, 123  
 Ghulam Dastagir, 121  
 Ghulam Heider, 116, 124  
 Ghulam Jilani Khan, 144  
 Ghulam Hassan, 116, 124  
 Ghulam Hassan & Ghulam Sarwar, 116  
 Ghulam Mohd., 121- 124  
 Ghulam Mohi ud-Din, 124  
 Ghulam Nabi, 124  
 Ghulam Nabi & Ghulam Haider, 116  
 Ghulam Shah Khan, 125  
 Ghulam Yahyah Khan, 61  
 Ghund, 21

## INDEX

Giberston, G. W. 131  
 Gilberton, 131  
 Gilgit, 100  
 Gillham, T., 131  
 Girishk, 24, 76, 91, 106, 109, 112  
 Gionnini, A., 131  
 Gleig, Rev. G. R., 131  
 Goat, 41  
 Gobineau, G. A., 131  
 Godard, A., 132  
 Gadard, T., 132  
 Godizerah lake, 26  
 Gogal, F. W., 141  
 Gokal Chand & Mohan Lall, 110  
 Gold, 45, 49  
 Gomai river, 13, 19, 20, 25, 87  
 Goose, 41  
 Gooseberry, 38  
 Gor Mar, 96  
 Gortchakaw, Prince, 11  
 Goshall, U. N., 132  
 Gourd, 35  
 Government Cotton Factory, 94  
 Government Purchase House, 116  
 Gram, 37  
 Granville, Earl, 11  
 Granary of Asia, 31, 92  
 Grapes, 30, 34  
 Graphite, 48  
 Gray, J. A., 132  
 Great Pamir, 21  
 Great Iranian Plateau, 15  
 Greenwood, Lieut., 132  
 Gubiri Markhow, 41  
 Gul Bahar, 34, 86, 94, 106  
 Gul Bagh, 87  
 Gulfagan, 48  
 Gul Mir and Ahad Mir, 116  
 Gul Mohd., 116  
 Gul Range, 89

Günther, H. F. K., 132  
 Gurzak melons, 36  
 Gurmukh Singh, 116  
 Guzargah, 25, 93

## H

Habibia College, 84  
 Habibullah, 121  
 Habibullah & Mohd. Hassan, 117  
 Habibullah Khan, 124  
 Habibullah Khan, Amir, 61, 150  
 Habib-us-Siyar, 145  
 Hackin, J., 132  
 Hadda Sharif, 1, 2, 79  
 Hafizullah Khan, 124  
 Haider Khan, Mirza, 144  
 Haijah, 45  
 Hajdah Nahr, 99  
 Haig, W., 132  
 Haji Jamal-ud-Din, 121  
 Hakim Sinai, 88  
 Hamal, 155  
 Hamid Husain, S., 132  
 Hamilton, A., 132  
 Hamza Sar Dawar, 145  
 Hanfi Sect, 55  
 Hanna, Col. H. B., 132  
 Hantig, W. O. von, 133  
 Hare, 40  
 Hari Rud, 9, 14, 16, 18, 23, 92, 94, 98  
 Hart, Capt. L. W., 133  
 Harud Rud, 14  
 Harut, 92  
 Harris, C., 133  
 Hashimi & Co., 117  
 Hashim Khel, 47  
 Hassan Mohd. & Bros., 117  
 Havelock, Capt. H., 133  
 Hayat-i-Nadir, 146  
 Hayden, H. H., 133

# INDEX

Hazara, 19, 24, 53  
 Hazarajat, 16, 24, 30, 32, 47  
 Hazel, 38  
 Hazrat Ali, Caliph, 96  
 Hazrat Gul, 117  
 Hazrat Gul & Ahmad Gul, 117  
 Hazrat-i-Baba pass, 98  
 Hazrat-i-Imam, 100  
 Hazrat-i-Said, 48  
 Hazrat Sultan, 96  
 Heden, S., 133  
 Hedgehog, 40  
 Hedjaz, 73  
 Helmand (Hilmand), 14, 18, 24, 26, 27,  
     35, 90, 91, 106, 108  
 Hemp, 30, 37  
 Henry, V, 133  
 Heras, Dr. Henry, 1, 133  
 Herat, 1, 6, 9, 10, 15, 16, 18, 23, 24, 27,  
     31—34, 36—38, 40, 41, 44,  
     45, 48, 76, 91—94, 97, 98, 106,  
     108, 109, 112, 123—125, 151,  
     152  
 Herbardt, O., 133  
 Herrlich, Dr. A., 133  
 Hesse, F., 133  
 Hetakis, 147  
 Heusman, H., 133  
 Higher Education, 65  
 Himalayas, 16  
 Hinduism, 55  
 Hindu Koh (Hindu Kush), 3, 12, 13, 16—  
     19, 21, 24, 26, 77, 83, 85, 94,  
     97, 100  
 Hindus, 55  
 Hishkinakhud, 108  
 Hissarak-i-Ghalzai, 47, 100  
 Holditch Col. Sir T., 133  
 Honeysuckle, 38  
 Hootak mountain, 47

Hopkins, D., 133  
 Horse, 41  
 Hosiery, 49  
 Hotel de Jalalabad, 79  
 Hotel de Kabul, 85  
 Hough, 133  
 Hough, Major, 133  
 Houghes, T. P., 133  
 House of Representatives, 59  
 Huien Tsiang, 1, 17, 99  
 Hukam Singh, 117  
 Hukumat-i-Ala, 9  
 Humayun, 149  
 Hunza, 13, 16  
 Husain mountain, 46  
 Hut, 155  
 Hyacinth, 40  
 Hyaena, 40  
 Hydro-Electric House, 94  
 Hygiene, 63

## I

Ibrahim Falad, 117  
 Ibtidaiah, 67  
 Idgah, 83  
 Ihtihad, 152  
 Ihtihad-i-Mashraqi, 152  
 Ihtaria School, 84  
 Ilinski, 141  
 Ilmar, 98  
 Ilyas-ud-Din Khan, 125  
 Imam Bux & Mohd. Ramzan, 117  
 Imam Sahib, 40  
 Imam-ud-Din & Shams-ud-Din, 117  
 Imports, 48, 49  
 Independence Column, 84  
 India, 5, 6, 12, 15, 19, 28, 30, 32, 33, 35,  
     51, 85, 90, 154  
 Indigo, 38  
 Indirab, 17, 18, 96

# INDEX

Indo-Afghan frontier, 28  
 Indo-European languages, 2  
 Indus, 16, 20, 25, 28  
 Iqtisad, 151  
 Iran, 9, 13, 14, 23, 73, 154  
 Iranian Legation, 84  
 Iraq, 154  
 Irises, 40  
 Iron, 46, 49  
 Irrigation, Karez, 42  
 Irrigation, Source, 42  
 Ishkamish, 111  
 Ishkashimi dialect, 54  
 Ishkashim, 12, 21, 48, 106  
 Islah, 151  
 Islam, 55  
 Islam Kila, 94, 106, 109, 154  
 Islim, 10  
 Ismailis, 55  
 Istaliff, 40, 86, 106  
 Istiqlal College, 84  
 Istragah, 13  
 Italian Legation, 84  
 Italy, 154  
 Itifaqi Islam, 152  
 Iven, H. E., 134

## J

Jabul-us-Siraj, 33, 43, 46, 86, 94, 106  
 Jaddi, 155  
 Jadran, 19, 47, 48  
 Jahan Numa, 96, 110  
 Jaji, 19, 101  
 Jalalabad, 19, 25—28, 31, 32, 34, 76—78,  
 80, 106, 108, 112, 120, 152  
 Jaldak, 89  
 Jalrez, 25  
 Jamal-ud-Din Afghani, Syid, 5, 144  
 Jama-ul-Twarikh, 144  
 Jamshid, 117

Japan, 154  
 Jar Ali mountain, 46  
 Jaworskij, J. L., 134  
 Jawza, 155  
 Jedda, 73, 154  
 Jessamine, 40  
 Jews, 55  
 Jigdalik, 25, 33, 47, 81, 106, 108  
 Jodh Singh & Uttam Singh, 126  
 Jughrafiya-i-Afghanistan, 144  
 Jughrafiya-i-Herat, 144  
 Jughrafiya-i-Tarikh-i-Iran, 145  
 Juice, 49  
 Juniper, 38

## K

Kabul, 1, 4, 9, 13, 16, 19, 24—28, 30,  
 32—34, 36, 39, 43, 44, 46—48,  
 62, 65, 68, 74, 76—78, 81,  
 83—88, 94—96, 98—101, 105—  
 110, 112, 114—116, 151, 152  
 Kabul, The (newspaper), 65, 151  
 Kabul-Kandahar road, 27  
 Kabul-Mazar road, 99  
 Kabul-Peshawar road, 25  
 Kabul river, 13, 17—20, 24, 25, 29, 78,  
 83—85  
 Kabul University, 85  
 Kachin, 17  
 Kaddah, 24  
 Kafirstan, 13, 79  
 Kafirnihan, 22  
 Kaghazi walnut, 34  
 Kai, 48  
 Kaiser, 98  
 Kaja, 30  
 Kala-i-Kazi, 87  
 Kalai-Kum, 22  
 Kalai-Panja, 21  
 Kalai-Wanar, 20

# INDEX

- Kalat-i-Ghalzai, 19, 24, 76, 77, 88, 89,  
106, 108, 112
- Kama, 25
- Kamard, 96
- Kanawez cloth, 44
- Kandahar, 1, 6, 9, 16, 27, 30, 32—36, 38,  
39, 44, 76, 77, 87—92, 97,  
106, 108, 109, 112, 120—  
123, 147
- Kandahar-Herat road, 24, 35, 92, 106
- Kansar, 23
- Kan Singh, 126
- Kaoshan, 17
- Karachi, 73, 156
- Karakuli, 3, 41, 48
- Karakum, 15, 23
- Karam Bux, 117
- Karam Chand, 117
- Karawal Khana, 10, 23
- Karbas cloth, 33, 44
- Karez, 31, 89, 94, 109
- Karez Elias, 9
- Karim-i-Nazibi, 144
- Karugh, 25
- Kashan, 10, 23
- Kashka pass, 93
- Kashkaki, Burhan-ud-Din, 141, 144
- Kashkar, 25
- Kash Rud, 14, 24, 92
- Kataghan, 22, 41, 46—48, 100
- Kataghan-Badakhshan, 9, 16, 17, 35
- Katasang, 81, 82, 106
- Katawaz, 16
- Katrak, S. K. H., 134
- Kawian mountain, 45
- Kaye, J. W., 134
- Kennedy, R. H., 134
- Khair Khana, 86, 94
- Khair-ul-Bayan, 54
- Khaki Jabbar, 46, 81, 82, 106
- Khalili Afghan, 144
- Khamiah, 9—11, 97
- Khanabad, 32, 33, 47, 76, 96, 99, 100  
108, 110—112, 152
- Khan Chand and Khem Chand, 121
- Kharzar, 17
- Khawak pass, 16, 17
- Khiva, 9
- Khogyani, 47
- Khoknal, 17
- Khorok, 21
- Khorpan, 54
- Khosai, 51
- Khost, 35, 96, 101, 106
- Khurd Kabul, 46, 82
- Khumri bridge, 96
- Khund Mir, 145
- Khushhal Khan Khatak, 5, 54
- Khuzuk, 20
- Khwaja Bughra mountain, 47
- Khwaja Dokoh, 98, 110
- Khwaja Imran, 20
- Khwaja Nizam-ud-Din, 117
- Khwaja Salar, 10
- Khyber pass, 13, 19, 20
- Kila Ghibi, 106, 110
- Kila-i-Darwesh, 24
- Kila-i-Jadid, 90, 91, 105, 109
- Kila-i-Naw, 37, 97, 98, 109, 112
- Kilif, 11
- Kilik, 16
- Kilki Arusan grape, 34
- Kimini, 94
- Kingfisher, 41
- Kirmak, 45
- Kishkinakhud, 106
- Kishmish (raisin-), 34
- Klaproth, J., 134
- Kochi Tribe, 53
- Kohat, 53



# INEEX

Koh-i-Baba, 10, 16, 18, 23, 26, 47, 97  
 Koh-i-Babak (Parapomisus), 16  
 Koh-i-Deer, 41  
 Kohi Surakh, 46, 48  
 Koh-i-Tan, 11  
 Kon-i-Tiran, 45  
 Kohnah Khumar, 46  
 Kokcha, 17, 18, 22, 110  
 Kokran, 49, 90  
 Kolali, 81, 108  
 Kol Barak, 46  
 Koli Jang, 94  
 Kotali-Yak-Linga, 83  
 Kotwal, 67  
 Kotwali, 74  
 Krasnovodsk, 6  
 Kulah, 22  
 Kunar, 13, 17, 18, 25, 32, 34, 37, 38  
 Kunduz, 18, 22, 31, 33, 40, 96, 106, 111, 112  
 Kurmach, 98  
 Kurram, 13, 25  
 Kurugh mountain, 48  
 Kush, 23  
 Kushan, 23  
 Kush-Kinski, 6, 10  
 Kurk cloth, 44  
 Kusk, 112  
 Kussy Ghar, 19

## L

Laboncow, 141  
 Lachman, 121  
 Laghman, 16, 25, 29, 31, 32, 34  
 Lahore, 2  
 Lahmi crops, 31  
 Lakri, 14  
 Lako & Asho, 121  
 Lakshmi Chand & Bishan Dass, 117  
 Lalandar Gorge, 25

Lal grape, 35, 93  
 Lali Badakhshan, 144  
 Lall, M., 134  
 Lall Chand & Ram Chand, 118  
 Lalu & Wazir Chand, 118  
 Landi Khana, 13  
 Langar-Kisht, 21  
 Lapis-Lazuli, 49  
 Lataband pass, 81, 82, 108  
 Lawrence, 134  
 Lead, 47  
 League of Nations, 73  
 Leech, Lieut. R., 134  
 Leitner, G. W., 134  
 Le Messurien, 135  
 Lemon, 28, 34, 38  
 Lentils, 29, 37  
 Leo, 155  
 Leopard, 40  
 Leszczynski, G. L., 134  
 Lettuce, 36, 37  
 Levi, 134  
 Levi, S., 134  
 Lidak, 142  
 Liquors, 74  
 Literary Society, 64, 65  
 Lithography, 63  
 Little Pamir, 12, 16, 20  
 Locoste, Major de B. de, 134  
 Loewenthal, J., 134  
 Logofet, D. N., 141  
 Loftus, Lord, 11  
 Logar, 19, 25, 80, 100  
 London, 6, 73, 156  
 Lorimer, Major, D. L. R., 134  
 Low, C. R., 134  
 Lucerne, 31, 37  
 Luffa, 35  
 Luk rice, 32  
 Lumsden, 134

# INDEX

Lunatic Asylum, 85  
 Lutfur Rahman, 118  
 Lycée Janson de Sailly, 68  
 Lycée Michlet, 68  
 Lyons, 134

## M

Macgragor, 135  
 Mac Gregor, Maj-Gen., Sir C. M., 135  
 Machinery, 49  
 Mackenzie, 135  
 Mackenzie C. F., 135  
 Macksy, E., 135  
 MacMahon A. H., 135  
 MacMahon and H. H. Hudleston, 134  
 MacMahon Line, 14  
 Macmunn, Sir G. M., 135  
 Madder, 30, 37  
 Madras, 54  
 Madrasah, 93  
 Maheen rice, 32  
 Mahipar, 25  
 Mahmud Ghaznavi, Sultan, 5, 42, 88  
 Maidan, 47, 87, 108  
 Maimanah, 9, 10, 31, 34, 46, 48, 76, 77,  
     97, 98, 105, 106, 109, 110,  
     113, 176  
 Maitland, 135  
 Maiwand, 91  
 Maize, 30, 35  
 Majlis, 59  
 Makhzan-i-Afghani, 54, 144  
 Makhzan-i-Islam, 54  
 Maktab-i-Ihzaria, 62  
 Malleson, 135  
 Malik Siah Mountain, 13, 14  
 Mamakai, 25  
 Mamakhel, 80  
 Mami, 89  
 Manal pass, 17

Mandal, 17  
 Mano Singh & Ram Singh, 122  
 Manzil Bagh, 89  
 Maqsood, 118  
 Marco Polo, 41  
 Marigold, 40  
 Marks, coin, 156  
 Martin, F. A., 135  
 Maruchak, 10, 23, 98  
 Marvin, 135  
 Maryam, Princess, 150  
 Mash, 30  
 Mashine Khana, 84  
 Massacre of the British Garrison, 147  
 Mason, 99, 135  
 Mason, C., 135  
 Masud, Sultan, 88  
 Masum Ahmad & Abdul Razaq, 118  
 Matak bridge, 106, 109  
 Matun, 113  
 Maula Dad Khan, 124  
 Maurice, F., 135  
 Mazar, 48, 96  
 Mazarat-i-Ghazni, 145  
 Mazar-i-Sharif, 9, 19, 31-34, 41, 44, 45,  
     48, 76, 77, 94-98, 105, 106,  
     109-111, 113, 125  
 Mazar-Kabul road, 98  
 Measure, 157  
 Mechanical School, 84  
 Medical Faculty, 65  
 Medical School, 84  
 Mela-i-Gul-i-Surkh, 97  
 Melnikow, 141  
 Malons, 30, 35  
 Mercury, 90  
 Merkowski, B., 135  
 Meshad, 73  
 Meshad (of Kisham), 110  
 Merv, 6, 10, 23, 92

## INDEX

- Merv-Kush-Kinski Railway, 10  
 Mianishin mountain, 47  
 Michini, 25  
 Middle Ages, 6  
 Middle East, 9  
 Military Club, 84  
 Military Hospital, 83  
 Military School, 84  
 Millet, 30  
 Mimosa, 92  
 Mingatake, 16  
 Ministry of Public Works, 83  
 Ministry of Trade, 74  
 Ministry of War, 84  
 Minjani dialect, 54  
 Mir Abdullah, 147  
 Mir Ahmad, 118  
 Mirak, 47  
 Mir Alam, 96  
 Mir Hussain, 147  
 Mir Ibrahim, 118  
 Mir Ismail, 118  
 Mir Mahmud, 147  
 Mir Mohd. Hussain & Ghulam Hussain,  
     118  
 Mir Rahim, 118  
 Mir Wais, 5  
 Mir Wais Khan, 147  
 Mir Waiz & Abdul Qadir, 118  
 Mirza Dost Mohd., 124  
 Mirza Fateh Mohd., 125  
 Mirza Ghulam Qadir, 125  
 Mirza Mohd. Ali, 118  
 Mitford, 135  
 Mizan, 155  
 Moaawiah, 93  
 Mohammedan Law, 60, 67  
 Mohammedzais, 147,  
 Mohd. Afzal & Sons, 118  
 Mohd. Agha, 100  
 Mohd. Akbar Khan, Prince, 150  
 Mohd. Alam Khan, 124  
 Mohd. Ali, Ghulam Ali & Bros, 118  
 Mohd. Ali, Mohd. Umar & Bros, 118  
 Mohd. Anwar, 121, 124  
 Mohd. Asif Khan, Sardar, 150  
 Mohd. Ashur, 118  
 Mohd. Aslam, 121  
 Mohd. Aslam & Sikandar Khan, 118  
 Mohd. Ayub & Mohd. Qayum, 119  
 Mohd. Azim, 119  
 Mohd. Aziz Khan, Sardar, 150  
 Mohd. Baqi Khan, 124  
 Mohd. Daud Khan, Sardar, 150  
 Mohd. Din, 121  
 Mohd. Gul Khan, 60, 90, 146  
 Mohd. Hadi Khan, 124  
 Mohd. Haider Khan, 124  
 Mohd. Hashim Khan, 150  
 Mohd. Hashim Khan, Sardar, 60, 66  
 Mohd. Hassan, 122  
 Mohd. Hassan Khan, 124  
 Mohd. Hassan Yakub, 146  
 Mohd. Hussain Khan, 146  
 Mohd. Ibrahim Khan, 124  
 Mohd. Iqbal, Dr. Sir, 145  
 Mohd. Ismail Khan, 135  
 Mohd. Jan & Siraj-ud-Din, 122  
 Mohd. Karim Khan, 61  
 Mohd. Khan, Mirza, 61  
 Mohd. Murad Bhai, 126  
 Mohd. Musa, 119  
 Mohd. Nabi Khan, 124.  
 Mohd. Nadir & Mohd. Qadir, 119  
 Mohd. Nadir Shah, King, 5, 59—61, 66,  
     84, 148—150  
 Mohd. Naim Khan, Sardar, 61, 63, 150  
 Mohd. Naw-Roze Khan, 61  
 Mohd. Qasim, 122  
 Mohd. Qasim Farishta, 145

# INDEX

Mohd Rahim, 122  
 Mohd. Rafiq & Mohd. Sharif, 119  
 Mohd. Raza, 145  
 Mohd. Said & Ghulam Qadir, 119  
 Mohd. Saleh, 145  
 Mohd. Sarwar & Ghulam Qadir, 122  
 Mohd. Sarwar & Mohd. Tahir, 119  
 Mohd. Sarwar Khan, 125  
 Mohd. Sharif & Mohd. Aslam, 119  
 Mohd. Sharif Khan, 124  
 Mohd. Sufi Khan, 124  
 Mohd. Tahir, 125  
 Mohd. Umar & Mohd. Zaman, 119  
 Mohd. Usman Sidqi, 144  
 Mohd. Yaqub, 125,  
 Mohd. Yusif Hervi, 145  
 Mohd. Yusif Khan, 61  
 Mohd. Yusif Khan Sardar, 150  
 Mohd. Zahir Shah, King, 77  
 Mohen Lall, 135  
 Mohi-ud-Din Anees 144  
 Mohmand, 13, 25, 89, 108  
 Mohn, P. 135  
 Moin-ud-Din Asfazari, 145  
 Mole, 40  
 Moman Khan, 119  
 Mongols, 15  
 Mongoose, 40  
 Monich, 142  
 Mont Blanc, 13, 26  
 Moqim Bhai, 135  
 Morgan, J. De, 135  
 Morga Range, 13  
 Morgenstiene, G. 136  
 Morrish, C., 136  
 Moscow, 6, 73  
 Moti, 122  
 Motors, 49  
 Mughals, 4, 14  
 Mujallah-i-Baladiyah, 15

Mujallah-i-Sihaya, 151  
 Mukar, 76, 77, 89, 107, 108, 113, 136  
 Mulberry 25, 30, 33  
 Munari-Chakari, 96  
 Mundah mountain, 46  
 Murahah, 67  
 Murghab, 10, 22  
 Murghab, Bala, 23  
 Murghab river, 21  
 Murgh-i-Zarin, 41  
 Musa Abad, 14  
 Musafar, 145  
 Musaii, 46  
 Museum, 85  
 Musk, 30  
 Mussalah, 93  
 Mustard, 30, 37

## N

Nadir Afghan, 144  
 Nadir-i-Iran, 147  
 Nadir Shah the Great, 66  
 Nahrin, 107, 111  
 Naib-ul-Hukumagi, 9, 67  
 Naizar, 14  
 Najrab, 86  
 Nalanda, 1  
 Namaksars, 15  
 Nand Lall, 122  
 Nand Lall & Lall Chani, 119  
 Nand Lall & Manak Chand, 119  
 Narain Dass, 122  
 Narain Singh & Ram Singh, 122  
 Naranjan Dass, 119  
 Narcissus, 40  
 Narimano, 142  
 Narin, 46  
 Nasratabad, 93, 106, 109, 110  
 Nazar Mohd., 119  
 Nazian pass, 47

# INDEX

Nazuk-badan apple, 34  
 Neamatullah, 144  
 Neill, 136  
 Nek Mohd. Khan, 125  
 Nerhardt, 133  
 New Chaman, 6, 13, 30, 90.91 91, 109  
 New Fort ((Jila-i-Jangi), 84  
 New York, 159  
 Nickle, 48  
 Niedermayer, 136  
 Niedermayer, O.von and Diez Ernst, 136  
 Niedermayer, R-O.von. 136  
 Nijat Bazar, 83  
 Nikulin, O, 142  
 Nimla, 77, 81, 107, 108  
 Nizam-ud-Din Ahmad, 144  
 North Indian Plain, 15  
 Nott, 136  
 Noyce, F., 136  
 Numismatics, 1, 2  
 Nuristan, 13, 16—18, 25, 35, 36, 38, 79,  
 80  
 Nuristani language, 54  
 Nur Mohd, 122  
 Nut, 21

## O

Oak, 38  
 Oath of Coronation, 68  
 Oats, 32  
 Obah, 94  
 Obuchet, W. A., 142  
 Odandapura, 1  
 Old Habibia College, 54  
 Oleiferous plants, 37  
 Olive, 38  
 Oliver, F. E., 136  
 Olympics. 50  
 Olympic villa, 84  
 Onion, 36

Opian, 1  
 Opium 30, 49  
 Oranges. 28, 34  
 Oriole, 41  
 Ormari language, 54  
 Orta Bel, 12  
 Oulian, 17  
 Ovis poli sheep, 41  
 Oxus (Amu, Panja), 10, 11, 12, 18, 21, 22,  
 25, 27, 97, 100

## P

Paget, 136  
 Paghman, 4, 24—26, 46, 77, 85, 94, 107,  
 113  
 Paiwar, 13, 20  
 Palestine, 154  
 Palio Kaikis, 142  
 Palm, 38  
 Pamir, 11, 12, 15, 16, 20, 21, 36, 41, 79  
 Panja (Amu, Oxus), 12, 20, 21, 100  
 Panjab, 27, 28  
 Panjabi language, 54  
 Panjdeh, 23  
 Pandjeh conflict, 11, 145  
 Panjsheer, 16, 17, 86  
 Parachi language, 54  
 Parachinar, 74  
 Parapomismus, 6, 16, 18 19, 23, 98  
 Paris, 62, 63, 73, 150  
 Parun pass, 80  
 Pashai language, 54  
 Pashki, 80  
 Pashto, 19, 53, 54, 69, 145  
 Pashto Sind, 146  
 Pashto Tolana (Pashto Assembly), 64  
 Pata Kaiser, 11  
 Peaches, 28, 30, 34, 57  
 Pears, 28, 30, 35  
 Peas, 29, 30, 37  
 Pecorella, C. M., 136

# INDEX

- Peer Kotaki mountain, 45  
 Pelu, 17  
 Pennell, A. M., 136  
 Pennell, P. L., 136  
 Pepper, 49  
 Perfumeries, 49  
 Pernot, M., 136  
 Perrin, N., 136  
 Persian, 54, 144  
 Persian wheel, 43  
 Peshawar, 2, 25, 34, 53, 73, 74, 76, 78, 86, 150  
 Petroleum, 46, 49, 76  
 Phaseolous Mungo, 30  
 Philology, Comparative, 2  
 Pigeons, 41  
 Pignolia (pine), 35  
 Pimiak, 22  
 Pine, 35  
 Pires, E. A., 136  
 Pir-i-Roshan (Dayzid Ansari), 54  
 Pisces, 155  
 Pishik (conscription), 63  
 Pishin, 13, 19, 20  
 Pishin Lona river, 13  
 Pistachio, 28, 30, 35, 96  
 Platen, K. G. von, 136  
 Platinum, 49  
 Plowden, Maj. T. C., 136  
 Plums, 28, 30  
 Plunkett, Capt. G. T., 136  
 Podbornoe, 142  
 Poisons, 74  
 Poland, 154  
 Polosai, 13  
 Pomegranates, 30, 33  
 Pony, 41  
 Popowski, J., 137  
 Poppy, 37  
 Postal Service, 70  
 Posteen, 28, 44, 49  
 Potato, 36  
 Poand, 156  
 Prime Minister, 60  
 Priukow, B. M., 142  
 Princep, 137  
 Prisons, 66  
 Ptolemy, 1  
 Ptuk, 21  
 Public Hospital, 85  
 Public Works (Fawad-i-Amah), 65  
 Pul-i-Anaristan, 107, 175  
 Pul-i-Begam, 106, 110  
 Pul-i-Doshi, 107, 110  
 Pul-i-Khatun, 9  
 Pul-i-Khumri, 33, 43, 99, 101, 107, 110  
 Pul-i-Matak, 94, 107  
 Pul-i-Ranga, 107, 109  
 Pul-i-Toti, 107, 110  
 Pul-i-Zafar, 107, 110  
 Puls, 153, 154  
 Pumpkin, 35, 36
- ## Q
- Qarlar, 48  
 Qila Beza, 95, 107  
 Qila Beza, 109  
 Qila-i-Jadid, 11  
 Qirans, 156  
 Qurtar, 47  
 Qurs, 155  
 Quetta, 13, 73, 74, 89  
 Quinces, 30, 33  
 Quran, 60, 93
- ## R
- Radios, 49, 63  
 Radish, 29, 36  
 Rafiqi Sanatorium, 85

## INDEX

Rahim Dad Khan, 125  
 Rahim Ullah Khan, 61  
 Raisins, 34  
 Ram Chand & Faqir Chand, 119  
 Rang, 21  
 Rattray, 137  
 Raverty, H. G., 137  
 Ravo, J. S., 137  
 Rawlinson, Sir M. G., 137  
 Red mountain, 48  
 Red pass, 46  
 Red Sea, 6  
 Reforms, 61  
 Registan, 31  
 Reign of Terror, 148  
 Reis, S. A., 137  
 Reismer, L., 137  
 Reismer, Prof. I. M., 143  
 Reisor, Lorisa, 143  
 Religion, 56  
 Rice, 30—32  
 Rickmer Rickmers, 137  
 Ridgeway boundary, 11  
 Ridgeway, Col. West, 11  
 Ridgeway line, 19  
 Ritteh, G., 143  
 Ritter, K., 143  
 Riyasats, 63  
 Robat, 10  
 Roberts, 137  
 Robertson, 137  
 Robertson, C. G., 137  
 Robertson, George, 80  
 Robertson, Sir G. S., 137  
 Rodenburgh, 137  
 Rome, 73  
 Roos-Keppel, Capt. G., 137  
 Rosaries, 44  
 Rose, 38  
 Roskolnikow F., 142

Roskoschny, H., 137  
 Ross, E. D., 137  
 Royal Cemetery, 83  
 Royal Coronation Oath, 60  
 Rozat-us-Safa, 145  
 Rubatak, 96  
 Rubat-i-Ghorian, 94  
 Rubies, 47  
 Rud-i-Kabul, 25  
 Rumania, 154  
 Rupees, 156  
 Russia, 6, 9, 12, 23, 27, 73, 98, 15  
 Russian language, 55  
 Russian, Turkestan, 5, 9, 20  
 Russo-Afghan Frontier, 10  
 Rustagh, 22  
 Rustumji, 119  
 Rybitschka, 137  
 Rye, 32

## S

Sabad, 96  
 Sabzak, 6, 97, 98  
 Sabzijat (leaf vegetables), 37  
 Sabzwar, 34, 91, 92, 107, 109  
 Sadozais, 147, 149  
 Safar Mohd. Khan, 125  
 Safderjang, 149  
 Safid Koh, 16, 18, 19  
 Saffron, 38  
 Sagittarius, 155  
 Sahibjan, 120  
 Said Ahmad Khan, 125  
 Saighan, 47, 96  
 Saighan-Kaward stream, 96  
 Salad, 37  
 Salam Khana (hall of audience), 84  
 Salang, 17  
 Sale, 137  
 Sale, Lady, 137

# INDEX

aleh Mohd, 122, 125  
 Salim Shah Khan, 125  
 Salt, 48  
 Samdi, 107, 110  
 Samt-i-Shimali, 34, 86, 94  
 Sandali, 28  
 Sangcharak, 97  
 Sang-i-Nawishta, 46  
 Sang-i-Wali, 47  
 Sanjak, 38  
 Sanjoor, 46  
 Sara-i-Jangal, 23  
 Sara-i-Khwaja, 107, 109  
 Saratan, 155  
 Sardah melons, 36  
 Sardah Singh, 126  
 Sargholami dialect, 54  
 Sarhad, 12  
 Saripul, 97  
 Sarkoli dialect, 54  
 Sari-qul lake, 11, 12, 21, 26  
 Sar Ishtirag, 17  
 Sar Khushk, 95  
 Sarlath range, 13  
 Sarobi, 25  
 Sarwar Jan, 123  
 Sarwar Jan & Mohd. Yusif, 122  
 Saur, 155  
 Sayed Husain Shirazi, 145  
 Sayid Hassan, 88  
 Scented melon, 30  
 Scheisbe, Dr. A., 138  
 School of Pharmacy, 63  
 Science Faculty, 65, 84  
 Schuyler, 138  
 Scorpio, 155  
 Scott, G. B., 137  
 Sesame, 30, 37  
 Second Afghan War, 148  
 Secondary Instruction, 65

Safflower, 37  
 Seifert, R., 138  
 Sementowskogo, D. S., 143  
 Senate, 59  
 Seward, A. C., 138  
 Shadbolt, 183  
 Shadwell, 138  
 Shah Abdullah-i-Budakhshi, 145  
 Shahab-ud-Din, 125  
 Shahamat Ali, 138  
 Shah Ashraff, 147  
 Shahjin, 113  
 Shahi Bank, 96  
 Shah-i-Foladi, 18  
 Shahi Kot, 45  
 Shah Mahmud, 149  
 Shah Mahmud, Emperor, 147  
 Shah Mahmud Khan Ghazi, Sardar, 60, 150  
 Shah Maqsud, 44  
 Shah Mardan, 97  
 Shah Mohd. Khan, Sardar, 62, 68  
 Shahmazi wheat, 32  
 Shahpur, 149  
 Shahr-i-Ghulghula, 99  
 Shah Rukh, 93  
 Shah, S. I. A., 138  
 Shah Shuja, 149  
 Shah Shuja, Emperor, 147  
 Shah Wali Khan, Sardar, 150  
 Shah Zaman, 149  
 Shah Zaman, Emperor, 147  
 Shaikhabad, 87, 107, 108  
 Shakar Darah, 86  
 Shakarpara apricot, 34  
 Shakh, 21  
 Sham Dass, 123  
 Shankir Dass & Ram Chand, 120  
 Shariat, 67  
 Shari Chand & Uttam Chand, 120  
 Shash-holang pass, 45



# INDEX

- Shashgao, 87, 108  
 Sheep, 40, 41  
 Shela, 14  
 Sheptal, 17  
 Sher Ahmad Khan, Sardar, 60  
 Sher Ahmad, Sher Mohd. & Bros., 120  
 Sher Ali Khan, Amir, 148, 150  
 Sheranis, 19  
 Sher Dil Khan, 120  
 Sherdarvaza, 83  
 Sher Mohammed Khan, 144  
 Sher Shah Suri, 5, 144  
 Shuan E., 143  
 Shewah, 26  
 Shias, 55  
 Shibar, 95  
 Shibarghan, 11, 12, 35, 97, 98, 107, 109,  
     110, 113  
 Shignan, 21  
 Shibar pass, 109  
 Shikari pass, 95, 98, 107  
 Shikari river, 96  
 Shinawar, 47, 48  
 Shirintagab, 107, 110  
 Shirkat-i-Itahadiya, 125  
 Shirkat-i-Itahadiya Shimali, 125  
 Shirkat-i-Karakuli, 120  
 Shirkat-i-Mewah, 120  
 Shirkat-i-Pashtoon, 123  
 Shirkat-i-Petrol Qand, 120  
 Shirkat-i-Watan, 123  
 Shiva, 123  
 Shorab, 107, 111  
 Shoraba, 10  
 Shorawak, 13, 19, 20  
 Shor Thappa, 48  
 Siah Bini, 47  
 Siah Gird, 95  
 Siah Girdi Ghorband, 107, 109  
 Siah Koh (Black mountain), 14, 16, 92  
 Siahoshan, 94  
 Sikaram, 19  
 Sikhs, 55  
 Silkworms, 33  
 Silver, 45, 49  
 Sinai, 144  
 Sinaya Kniga, 143  
 Singapore, 154  
 Sipah Salar, 61  
 Siracha bridge, 107  
 Sirandaz Khan, 120  
 Siraj-ul-Twarikh, 144  
 Sistan, 14, 15, 24, 34, 35, 92  
 Sistan lake, 41  
 Skins, 48  
 Skrawni, 143  
 Slate, 48  
 Small-pox vaccination, 63  
 Snegarev A.E., 143  
 Society of Pashto, 64  
 Sofi Khudai Nazar, 125  
 Sokolowstrakhov, 143  
 Solomon's Throne, 19  
 Soof pass, 4, 46  
 Sorghum, 35  
 Southern Province, 9, 19, 46, 48  
 Spinach, 36, 37  
 Spin Bolak, 76, 90  
 Spin Ghar, 13, 18, 19, 26, 38, 80  
 Spin Taizeh, 19  
 Sports, 63, 120  
 Starr, L. A., 138  
 Stationery, 49  
 Stein, M. A., 138  
 Stein, Sir A., 138  
 Stemdale, 138  
 Stocqueller, 138  
 St. Peterzburg, 11  
 Strafgesetzbuch, 138  
 Stratil Sauer, 138

# INDEX

Stratil Sauer, G., 138  
 Subaktagin, Sultan, 88  
 Sugar, 49  
 Sugarcane, 31, 32  
 Sugar-making, 43  
 Sukkan, 95  
 Sulaiman Range, 18, 19, 20  
 Sulpher, 47  
 Sultan Mohammed Khan, 138, 144  
 Sultan Mohammed Khan, Sardar, 33, 150  
 Sunbulah, 155  
 Surkhab, 17, 18, 22, 48  
 Surkhpul, 81, 107, 108  
 Surkh Rod, 25  
 Swat, 13  
 Sweden, 154  
 Switzerland, 154  
 Syrup, 48

## T

Tablot, Capt. M. G., 138  
 Tabaqat-i-Akbari, 144  
 Tagab, 86  
 Taghri, 29  
 Taj-ul-Twarikh, 144  
 Takhtipul, 91  
 Takht-i-Safar, 93  
 Takht-i-Sulaiman, 19  
 Takyah, 87  
 Tala, 96  
 Talao Barfak, 45  
 Talukan, 33, 36, 48  
 Tamarisk, 92  
 Tamerlane (Timur), 14, 17, 141  
 Tangalab, 23  
 Tangi Gharu, 25  
 Tanzi, G., 138  
 Tapai Maranjan, 83  
 Tashqurghan, 32, 43, 48, 77, 96, 97, 110, 106, 111, 113

Tarikh-i-Afghan, 144  
 Tarikh-i-Afghanistan, 144, 146  
 Tarikh-i-Ahmad Shah Durrani, 146  
 Tarikh-i-Farishita, 154  
 Tarikh-i-Hafiz, 145  
 Tarikh-i-Herat, 144, 145  
 Tarikh-i-Khusaid-i-Jahan, 144  
 Tarikh-i-Murasa, 146, 154  
 Tarikh-i-Rashidi, 144  
 Tarikh-i-Sultani, 144  
 Tarim, 10  
 Tarnak river, 88, 89  
 Tashqurghan, 32, 43, 48, 77, 96, 97, 110, 106, 111, 113  
 Tate, G. P., 139  
 Taurus, 67, 155  
 Taxila, 2  
 Taylor, W., 139  
 Tea, 49  
 Technical Institution, 69  
 Teheran, 73  
 Tejend, 23  
 Telegraphs, 49, 154  
 Telephones, 49, 154  
 Termez, 55  
 Tertiary Period, 15  
 Textiles, 49  
 Thakerav, Sir E., 139  
 Thall, 13  
 Theology, 65  
 Third Afghan War, 84, 148  
 Third Battle of Panipat, 147  
 Thomas, L., 139  
 Thorburn, S. S., 139  
 Thorburn, 139  
 Thornton, 139  
 Tibetan Yak, 100  
 Tiger, 40  
 Tol, 17

# INDEX

Timur, 149  
 Timur, Shah. 149  
 Timur Shah, Empror, 147  
 Tirah, 13  
 Tirahi language. 54  
 Tir-Bandi Turkestan, 18, 19, 22  
 Tirich Mir. 13, 16  
 Tirmahi apple. 34  
 Tirmahi harvest (autumnal harvest). 30  
 Tirpul, 45, 46, 94, 113  
 Tizin, 82  
 Tobacco, 30, 49  
 Tochi, 13, 20  
 Tokhi, 47  
 Tokyo, 73  
 Toman Agha, 23  
 Tomato. 36  
 Tori, 13  
 Torkani, 90  
 Torkham. 13, 76, 78, 108  
 Treaty of Durrand, 148  
 Treaty of Gandomak. 148  
 Trefoil. 31  
 Trimkler, Dr. E. 139  
 Trumpet. Dr. E., 139  
 Trumpet, flower, 38  
 Tul-i-Afghanistan, 152  
 Turanjbin. 39  
 Turkestani melons. 36  
 Turkey. 73, 154  
 Turki Pony, 41  
 Turkish Legation, 84  
 Turkish language. 55  
 Turnip. 29, 30, 36  
 Tuzak-i-Babari. 145  
 Tuzak-i-Timuri, 145  
 Twakal. 125

## U

Um-ul-Balad, 97  
 Unai Pass, 24  
 Urdu, 55, 146  
 Urdu-i-Afghan, 65, 151  
 Urgoon, 101  
 Uruzgan, 45, 46, 47  
 Uttam Chand, 120  
 Uzbuki language. 54

## V

Varna, 80  
 Vaughar, J. L. 139  
 Vavilof, I. N. and Bukinich, 143  
 Vavilov, N. I. and D. D. Bukinich, 139  
 Vedic hymns, 55  
 Verdak country. 24, 87  
 Victoria lake, 12, 26  
 Vigne, G. T., 139  
 Vine. 28  
 Vinegar. 49  
 Viollis, A. 139  
 Virgo, 155  
 Voight, M. 139

## W

Wakhan, 9, 11, 12, 16, 17, 21, 100  
 Wakhi dialect, 54  
 Wakhjir, 16  
 Walnut. 28, 30, 34, 38  
 Walker. P. F. 140  
 Wanji dialect, 54  
 Waqat-i-Durrani, 146  
 Warburton, Sir R., 139  
 War of Independence, 148  
 Warqa i- Iqamat, 74  
 Watches. 49  
 Water-melons, 30, 35, 36  
 Wazir Akbar Khan, 5, 150  
 Waziri country. 19

# INDEX

Waziristan, 13  
 Weed-hemp, 38  
 Weights, 157  
 Wheat, 28, 30—32  
 Wheeler, S., 139  
 White lead, 139  
 White mountain, 18, 19  
 White plums, 33.  
 Wild cat, 40  
 Wild dog, 40  
 Wild melons, 35  
 Wild peach, 38  
 Wild, R., 140  
 Wild vine, 38  
 Willocks, 139  
 Wilson, 140  
 Wolf, 40  
 Woit, 143  
 Wood's Lake, 12  
 Wool, 48, 139  
 Wyllie, 140  
 Wyllly, Col. H. C., 140

## Y

Yabu Pony, 41  
 Yaghnobi dialect, 54  
 Yahya Khan, Sardar, 150  
 Yakhdara, 46

Yakub Khan, Amir, 148, 150  
 Yarkand, 17  
 Yasin, 13  
 Yate, Lt. Col. C. C., 140  
 Yate, Maj. C. E., 140  
 Yaworski I. L., 143  
 Yazgholami dialect, 54  
 Yens, 156  
 Yew, 38  
 Yoli Pass, 9, 120  
 Yusafzais, 54  
 Yusifabad, 94

## Z

Zafrani wheat, 32  
 Zangolak, 19  
 Zarmast pass, 98  
 Zawal-i-Ghazi, 146  
 Zhob, 13  
 Ziarat-i-Shazadah, 93  
 Zinc, 94  
 Zindajahan, 23  
 Zinovieff, M., 11  
 Zoroaster, 55  
 Zoroastrianism, 55  
 Zuhak-i-Miran, 99  
 Zulfikar pass, 9, 11, 23

